

# 英语写作与 抽象名词表达

蔡基刚 著

English  
Writing

复旦大学出版社

# 英语写作与抽象名词表达

蔡基刚 著

復旦大學出版社

## 图书在版编目(CIP)数据

英语写作与抽象名词表达/蔡基刚著. —上海:复旦大学出版社, 2003. 9

ISBN 7-309-03548-8

I. 英… II. 蔡… III. 英语-写作 IV. H315

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2003)第 009140 号

## 英语写作与抽象名词表达

蔡基刚 著

---

出版发行 复旦大学出版社

上海市国权路 579 号 邮编 200433

86-21-65118853(发行部) 86-21-65109143(邮购)

fupnet@fudanpress.com <http://www.fudanpress.com>

---

责任编辑 计美娟

装帧设计 孙 曙

总 编 辑 高若海

出 品 人 贺圣遂

---

印 刷 江苏省扬中市印刷有限公司

开 本 850 × 1168 1/32

印 张 8.5

字 数 213 千

版 次 2003 年 9 月第一版 2003 年 9 月第一次印刷

印 数 1—6 000

---

书 号 ISBN 7-309-03548-8/H·701

定 价 12.00 元

---

如有印装质量问题, 请向复旦大学出版社发行部调换。

版权所有 侵权必究

## 内 容 提 要

本书从理论和实践的结合上对英语抽象名词进行了较为全面和系统的探讨。作者着重阐明了英语抽象名词的写作修辞功能,论述了英语抽象名词表达的运用,列举了其基本模式、常用搭配和习惯表达,并对英汉抽象名词的表达进行了比较。本书对希望进一步提高自己的英语写作能力与表达能力的读者具有较高的实用价值,对英语写作教学亦有很好的参考价值。



## 前 言

在阅读英语文章时,我们只要稍微留心一下,就会发现抽象名词的使用非常广泛。抽象名词的表达不仅仅成为现代英语的一个特点,而且形成和汉语表达的一个重大不同之处。从某种意义上来说,中国人学英语,尤其学英语写作,如果不掌握抽象名词的表达,就很难写出地道、耐读的英语文章来。

对一般英语学习者来说,要表达“大多数人对他的冷漠和有敌意,但他还是继续工作”,他们可能会写出这样的句子:

1. (a) He kept working though most of people were indifferent and hostile.

要表达“这些产品在市场上深受欢迎”,会写出:

2. (a) These products have been popular in the market.

要表达“没有几年工夫,我把英语全忘了”,会写出:

3. (a) In few years I have totally forgot English.

然而,他们是否想到或能够用以下的抽象名词来表达呢?

1. (b) He kept working in spite of general indifference and hostility.
2. (b) These products have found popularity in the market.
3. (b) In later years English has totally escaped my memory.

由此对比,我们明显感到抽象名词表达的生动性和简洁性。

本书就是为具有一定英语水平,并渴望提高自己的写作能力和表达能力的读者而写的。同时也为教师的英语写作教学提供参考。

本书试图从理论和实践的结合上对英语抽象名词进行较为全面和系统的探讨。它不仅阐明了英语抽象名词的写作修辞功能,

而且还对英汉抽象名词的表达进行了比较。

本书还另辟一章,专门论述抽象名词表达的运用,列举抽象名词表达的基本模式、常用搭配及其习惯表达。

由于对抽象名词表达的探索有许多争论,因此在阐述中难免有不同观点或错误。恳请专家和读者指正。

编者

2003年6月

# 目 录

<b>第一章 抽象名词的表达结构</b> .....	1
1.1 抽象名词的分类 .....	1
1.2 抽象名词的表达 .....	3
1.3 抽象名词结构的表达形式 .....	7
1.4 抽象名词结构的表达内容 .....	20
1.5 抽象名词结构的语体意义 .....	30
<b>第二章 抽象名词的修辞功能</b> .....	36
2.1 简洁 .....	36
2.2 生动 .....	45
2.3 变化 .....	49
2.4 平衡 .....	51
2.5 强调 .....	52
2.6 衔接 .....	55
2.7 节奏 .....	60
2.8 委婉 .....	66
<b>第三章 英汉抽象名词表达的比较</b> .....	68
3.1 汉语抽象名词的特点 .....	68
3.2 英汉抽象名词的语篇对比 .....	77
3.3 英语抽象名词的汉语对应表达 .....	84
3.4 英汉抽象名词表达多寡的原因 .....	89

<b>第四章 抽象名词表达的搭配及其运用</b> .....	99
4.1 抽象名词表达的基本模式 .....	100
4.2 抽象名词的常用搭配 .....	123
4.3 常用抽象名词的表达 .....	164
<b>抽象名词索引</b> .....	244
<b>主要参考文献</b> .....	259

# 第一章 抽象名词的表达结构

## 1.1 抽象名词的分类

什么是抽象名词的表达？抽象名词的表达和抽象名词不可分开。抽象名词是任何语言中都存在的一种客观现象。抽象名词是相对具体名词来说的一种叫法。如果说具体名词是现实物质世界中存在的,可以看得见、摸得着的东西,那么表示行为、品质这些“从典型性上来讲是观察不到和不可测量的”(R. Quirk, 1985),即表示抽象概念的词就是抽象名词。英语的抽象名词主要有三大类。

### (1) 行为抽象名词

研究英语的丹麦语法学家 Jespersen 把这类抽象名词称为动词性主谓连系词(verbal nexus-word)。这是因为这些抽象名词是从动词派生或转化来的,因而具有动作意义。它一般是动词加动词后缀构成的。如

- tion: realization, examination, contribution, organization
- sion: decision, conclusion, expression, omission
- ment: advertisement, development, achievement, arrangement
- ence: emergence, dependence, interference, existence
- ance: entrance, hindrance, resemblance, resistance
- ure: pressure, exposure, mixture, closure
- ism: criticism, alcoholism, fatalism
- al : arrival, removal, denial, withdrawal
- ge: knowledge, breakage

-ing: understanding, building, developing, coloring

行为抽象名词除了派生词外,还有零转化的词,即从动词直接转化过来,不改变其原来词的形式。如: dream, love, laugh, change, control 等。

[1] The merits of competition by examination are somewhat questionable, but **competition** in the certain **knowledge** of **failure** is positively harmful. (《大学英语英汉翻译技巧》)

通过考试来竞争,其好处有点让人怀疑。但是明明知道会失败,还是去竞争,这肯定是有害的。

显然这里的 competition, knowledge, failure 这三个名词都是抽象名词。从译文中可以看出他们都带有动作行为意义。

## (2) 品质抽象名词

Jespersion 把这类抽象名词称为表语性主谓连系词(predicative-word)。因为这类抽象名词主要是从形容词派生来的。由于形容词是对名词起修饰作用的,表示名词的性质、状态等,因此被称为品质抽象名词。它们是由形容词加形容词后缀构成的:

-ity: formality, ability, diversity, readability

-ness: carelessness, thoughtfulness, business, cleverness

-dom: boredom, freedom

-th: depth, length, health, warmth

-ty: safety, cruelty, beauty, entirety

-acy: accuracy, delicacy, intimacy, illiteracy

-ency: efficiency, sufficiency, fluency, deficiency

-ence: patience, difference, persistence, magnificence

-ance: ignorance, significance, abundance, resistance

-ship: hardship

-hood: falsehood, likelihood

还有部分从表示身份的名词派生而来的也归入此类。如:

-ship: readership, membership, friendship,

-age: parentage, pupillage

-hood: adulthood, childhood, manhood

-ism: heroism, individualism

[2] This subsection has rhetorical **usefulness** in that it enhances the **credibility** of the researcher. ( College English 6)

这部分具有修辞作用,因为它有助于提高研究者的可信性。

[3] Let's give up this good thing—the **ownership of a pet**—in favor of a more imperative good. (《大学英语自学教程》)

让我们放弃这件好事——拥有宠物——去从事一项更为必要的好事吧。

这里的 usefulness, credibility 和 ownership 都是品质抽象名词。

### (3) 固有抽象名词

这类抽象名词与前面两类的不同之处在于:他们不是从某个词类的词派生或转化来的,而是由英语语言直接形成的,表达实际生活中抽象的概念。如 war, art, music, reason, opinion, thought 等都属固有抽象名词。

## 1.2 抽象名词的表达

抽象名词的表达是指用抽象名词结构来表达句子意义,也就是我们通常说的名词化(nominalization)。确切地说,抽象名词表达就是以抽象名词结构来表达原本由动词和形容词结构来表达的句子意义。按照功能语言学的观点,这种名词化现象就是语法隐喻(grammaral metaphor)。所不同的是韩礼德借用了 congruent(一致性)metaphorical(隐喻性)两个术语,认为用动词和形容词等来表达的是一种“字面的”、“一致性”的表达形式,而用抽象名词来表达的是一种隐喻性的表达形式。不管如何叫法,抽象名词表达是一种语法过程或结构上的转变,它可以用转回动词或形容词结构表达。

抽象名词表达有两个显著的特征:1)抽象名词一般是从动词或形容词派生或转化来的(韩礼德认为情态词、介词、副词、连词等也可以转化)。2)抽象名词一般是 NP 结构,即名词短语结构,典型的结构是 N + of + N,虽然有时这个结构是隐性的,概念上的,具体表现有时只是单个抽象名词。由此可见并不是所有抽象名词都可用来作为抽象名词表达的。

根据这个定义,像 art, order, society 这些固有抽象名词可以排除掉。即使是行为抽象名词或品质抽象名词也不都可成为抽象名词的表达。

例如有些抽象名词虽然也是从动词或形容词派生来的,但已在词库里形成固定表达,相当于一个普通的名词,因此不算抽象名词表达。请比较:

- [4] Our very anxiety is born of our **knowledge** of what is now possible for each and all. (《大学英语第六册》)

我们之所以焦虑不安是因为我们知道对每一个人,对所有人可能发生什么事。

- [5] It is a revealing fact about our language and our culture that someone dedicated to pursuit of **knowledge** is compared to such a freak. (《21世纪大学英语第一册》)

把专心追求知识的人比做这样一种畸形人,这一事实突出地反映出了我们的语言和文化现状。

例[4]中的 **knowledge** 就是抽象名词表达:它是从动词 know 派生来的,形成了 NP 结构,又可以用 (is born of) the fact that we know (what) 句子来复原表达。但在[5]句子里,同样是 **knowledge**,也是派生抽象名词,但并不是行为抽象名词。此词作“知识”解已成为固定的表达,无法或不使用短语句子来表达,因此不是抽象名词的表达。还有如 value(价值), justice(正义), pride(光荣)等也是如此。



- [6] The **concept** does not propose new and radical ways to fight. Rather it describes **conflict** in term of an **environment** which considers not only conventional **systems**, but also chemical, nuclear, and electronic. It also forces **consideration** of this **conflict** in terms of reaching the enemy's follow-on echelons. **Consideration** of such a battle-field is necessary if we are to reinforce the **prospects** of winning. (Halliday & Mathiessen, 1999)

这种概念并不是提出新的激进的斗争方法,而是从环境角度描述冲突,而这个环境考虑的不仅仅是传统方面的因素,还有化学,原子核和电子方面的因素。这个概念还迫使人们从达到敌人第二层次角度考虑这种冲突。如果我们要争取胜利的前景,考虑这样一场战斗是必要的。

文中的 **concept**, **conflict**, **systems**, **environment**, **consideration**, **prospects** 都是抽象名词,但我们认为(这与有些学者观点不同)只有后三个可以说是抽象名词表达。而 **concept**, **conflict**, **systems**, **environment** 已成为固有的抽象名词,即使在非隐喻性的表达中也是这样说的。因此判断是否抽象名词表达,就要看这些抽象名词是否能转回到动词或形容词表达。

所以,抽象名词表达比较复杂,完全视语境而定。同一个行为抽象名词或品质抽象名词在 A 语篇中可视为抽象名词的表达,而在 B 语篇里则不是。

我们再来分析几例:

- [7] To insure the widest **acceptability** (or greatest potential **profitability**), the plot lines follow the most commonly accepted **notions of morality and justice**, whether or not those **notions** bear much **resemblance** to **reality**. (Expanding Reading Skill)

为了确保电视能被最广大的人们所接受,或获得最大的潜在利润,情节应按照大众对道德和正义最常见的看法,不管这些

看法和现实有没有关系。

在这个句子里,有 8 个抽象名词,但真正形成抽象名词表达的只有 acceptability, profitability, 和 resemblance.

acceptability = to insure that most people can accept it

profitability = to insure that the potential profits can be gained

resemblance = to resemble reality

而 notion(观念), morality(道德), justice(公正), reality(现实)虽也是抽象名词,但由于它们表示的是固定概念,因此不构成抽象名词表达。

[8] **Promotions** that merely offer a **discount** or a **rebate** can cheapen a brand's **image**. Since price is often a **signal** to consumers of a product's **quality**, a brand that is always on special **offer** loses its **appeal**. Better, says Mr Aaker, to try **promotions** that reinforce the brand's **image**, such as American Express's leather luggage tags, or increase brand **awareness** such as Pillsbury's baking **contests**. (《21 世纪大学英语第四册》)

仅提供打折或部分退款的促销会贬低一个品牌的形象。因为价格对消费者来说往往是一个产品质量的标志,所以一个总是特价出售的品牌便会失去魅力。艾克先生说,最好试用加强品牌形象的促销,如美国捷运公司的皮行李标签,或提高品牌意识的促销,如 Pillsbury' 的烘烤比赛。

抽象名词表达:

a **signal** = signal;

loss its **appeal** = can not appeal;

increase brand **awareness** = help to make people aware of the brand

一般抽象名词:

**promotions**(促销), **discount**(打折), **rebate**(部分退款), **quality**(质量), **image**(形象), **offer**(销售), **contests**(竞赛)

[9] The **failure** of challengers to overcome the **resilience** of familiar names has led to another tactic also prone to **short-termism**: brand-stretching. In their **eagerness** to extend a popular brand's **recognition** and **reputation** to a new type of product, says Mr. Aaker, managers often overlook basic problems with the "fit" between the old name and the new item. (《21 世纪大学英语第四册》)

挑战名牌没有能够征服知名品牌的顽强生存力,这便导致另一种短期策略:品牌扩展。艾克说,经营者们因渴望将一著名品牌的知名度和美誉度扩展到一个新的产品上,经常忽视旧名称和新产品之间“一致”的一些基本问题。

抽象名词表达:

failure = challengers fail to overcome

resilience = familiar names are resilient

short-termism = think or act in short-term way

eagerness = they are eager to

recognition = be recognized

reputation = be reputable

### 1.3 抽象名词结构的表达形式

从形式上来说,由于抽象名词表达的主要表现形式是 N + of + N,因此我们把所有抽象名词结构统称为 NP 结构。即任何一个包含抽象名词的短语都是抽象名词表达结构。但具体说来它可以有多种表现形式。

#### (1) of + noun

常见的形式有:

courses of **varying length** = some courses are shorter and some are longer  
a matter of **true significance** = a truly significant matter

[10] Carnegie, in moments of **expansive generosity**, liked to say that

he owed this success to the extraordinary group of “young geniuses” that he had managed to collect as his managing partners. (《大学英语第六册》)

卡尼奇在向社会慷慨解囊不断捐款时总爱说, 自己的成功归功于他成功地招集到一批杰出的年轻天才作为他管理的助手。

- [11] In practice, women often find it difficult to rise to positions of **leadership** even in professions they dominate. (Developing Reading Skill)

事实上, 妇女常常很难当上领导, 即使在她人数占绝对优势的领域也是如此。

- [12] He cannot be really happy if he is compelled by society to do what he does not enjoy doing, or if what he enjoys doing is ignored by society as **of no value or importance**. (《大学英语自学教程》)  
如果他迫于社会压力去干他不喜欢的事, 或他喜欢干的事常被社会视为没有价值或毫不重要而不以重视, 他不会真正感受到幸福。

- [13] Dad was full of **apprehension** as he seated himself before the great man. (《研究生基础英语 I》)

父亲在这位大人物面前就座时, 心怀忐忑不安之感。

- [14] Yet when she died last year, news reports detailed a lonely life of **deep unhappiness**. (《大学英语第六册》)

当她去年去世时, 新闻报道详细描写了她过的非常不幸的孤独生活。

## (2) noun + of

常见的形式有:

**the study of Chinese history** = to study Chinese history

**the misunderstanding of the meaning of democracy** = to misunderstand-

ing the meaning of democracy

- [15] A mere glance at strike statistics is enough to prove **the falseness of** such a conception. (Fox)

只需看一下罢工统计资料,就足以证明这种概念是虚伪的。

- [16] **The richness of** the soil favored **the growth of** crops. (Thorndike)  
肥沃的土壤有利于庄稼的生长。

- [17] **The delight of** the children at **the sight of** some ~~thing~~ on the table, showed that it was a rarity. (《英译汉理论与实践》)

孩子们看到某一道菜时就眉开眼笑,由此可见他们难得吃这样的菜。

- [18] It suggests a strong national sense that **encouragement and development of** the city was to be in no sense a national priority. (《大学英语第六册》)

这表明,整个国家普遍有一种感觉,鼓励和发展城市绝不是国家的重点。

(3) **noun + prep. (with, to, about, at)**

常见的形式有:

**their access to** the computer = they were able to reach the computer  
**advance in** technology = technology is getting better

- [19] Many of them grew up with it as teacher and babysitter, and have had lifelong **exposure to** its influence. (Expanding Reading Skill)  
许多人都是在电视机的伴随中长大,他们把电视机看成教师,看成保姆。他们一生就是受电视的影响。

- [20] The exaggerated sense of risk and insecurity may lead to **increasing demands for** protection, and to **increasing pressure for** the use of force by established authority. (Expanding Reading Skill)

对危险性和不安全性的夸大或许会导致人们越来越要求得到保护,越来越迫使当权者采取武力手段。

- [21] Painters, writers, and composers also have drawn heavily on **their sensitivity to** inner fantasies. (《大学英语自学教程》)

画家、作家和作曲家们也尽力利用他们自己内心想象的敏锐感觉。

(4) **with + noun**

常见的形式有:

**with surprising rapidity**

**with philosophical indifference**

- [22] Face **with growing power shortage** . . . , Edward Heath ordered his nation's industry placed on a three-day workweek. (《英译汉理论与实践》)

爱德华·希思看到电力越来越少……,乃下令在全国工业中实行每周3日工作制。

- [23] But it remains essential, and it has to be played **with increasing subtlety and sophistication**. (The Hungry World)

但它还是主要的,它的演奏越来越细微和复杂。

- [24] **With the primitive simplicity** of the masses a great lie is more effective than a small one. (《大学英语第六册》)

由于大众思维简单原始,一个大谎言往往比一个小谎言有效。

- [25] Attitudes are changing, however, and obviously will change further **with education, increased day-to-day familiarity, and the simple passage of time**. (《研究生基础英语》)

态度在变化,而且随着教育的提高,日常接触越来越熟悉,以及时间的流逝,态度当然会进一步变化。

- [26] We are taught from childhood to accept defeat **with dignity**, a conception that is certainly not ignoble. (Expanding Reading Skill)

我们从小孩子起接受的教育就是要尊严地接受失败,这种思

想当然并不可耻。

(5) **sb.'s + noun**

这种形式实际上是(2)的另一表达形式:

**their astonishment** = the astonishment of them = they are astonished

**his stupidity** = the stupidity of him = he is stupid

**His support** = the support of him = he supports

- [27] Not long ago, a foreign visitor whose English is extremely good told me of **his embarrassment** in a tea shop. (《英汉翻译基础》)

不久前,一位英语极好的外国客人告诉我他在一家小茶室里的窘状。

- [28] **Her indifference** kept all the visitors away from the exhibition hall. (《实用翻译教程》)

她的冷漠态度把许多参观者都挡在了展览馆门外。

- [29] Being aware of this research, I could not help wondering what steps man could take to ensure **his survival**. (Developing Reading Skill)  
认识到这一研究的结果,我自然想到我们应采取什么措施来确保人类自己的生存。

- [30] **Their disappointment** is rooted in mistaken inferences from a few spectacular medical achievements. (George F. Will: No Right to Health)

他们的失望是建立在他们对医学方面所取得的一些令人瞩目的成绩的错误判断上的。

- [31] Were it not for **their presence** and hard work, we could never make a move or even a song. (《研究生英语阅读》)

要不是他们的到场和努力工作,我们不可能有什么动作,甚至唱一首歌。

- [32] The Positive Woman looks upon **her femaleness** and **her fertility** as part of her purpose, her potential, and her power. (《研究生英语

泛读》)

持积极观点的妇女把她的母性和生育看做是她部分的人生目标,她的能力和力量。

(6) noun

单个抽象名词大多数和动词或介词搭配使用:

- [33] Unlike newspapers and magazines, television does not require **literacy**. (Expanding Reading Skill)

不像读报纸和杂志,看电视不需要任何读写能力。

- [34] **Resignation** is one of our most popular virtues. (Expanding Reading Skill)

顺从是最受欢迎的一种美德。

- [35] For us, memory does not demand the **preoccupation** that it demands in animals. (Expanding Reading Skill)

对我们来说,记忆并不要求像动物所需要的那样全神贯注。

- [36] Not at all, experts say, but they claim true happiness comes more in the striving to fulfill desires than in **the attainment**. (《研究生基础英语》)

专家们说,完全不是这样的,他们认为真正的幸福更多地来自于实现愿望的努力过程中,而不是得到的成就。

- [37] Well, as any philosopher can tell you, one good reason for **skepticism** is that you can't make assumptions about causes.

任何哲学家可以告诉你,产生怀疑的主要原因是你不能对起因做出假设。

- [38] But we seem to be generating a college population that oscillates between **apathy and hostility**. One of the major reasons for this **joylessness** in our university life is that the students see themselves as prisoners of economic **necessity**. (《研究生英语精读》)

但是我们所培养的一代大学生似乎对人充满冷漠和敌视。



他们对大学生活没有一点热情,其主要原因是他们把自己束缚在经济利益上。

除了以上基本形式,抽象名词前可以加形容词、过去分词和名词等修饰成分。

(1) **adj. + noun**

- [39] Henry J. Kaise maintained that "you can imagine your future," and he believed that a great part of this business success was due to **positive use of daydreams**. (《大学英语自学教程》)

亨利·杰·凯斯坚持认为“你可以想象自己的未来”,他还认为他事业成功的主要原因是积极运用了做白日梦的方法。

这时的 *adj. + noun* 的 NP 结构等于 *verb + adv.* 的 VP 结构:  
*positive use of daydreams = use daydreams positively*

- [40] A game is a way of making something hard for the fun of it. The rules of the game are an **arbitrary imposition of difficulty**. (John Ciardi: Is Everybody Happy)

所谓运动比赛实际上是为了乐趣而制造困难。比赛的规则就是武断地向参加者施加困难。

这里的 *an arbitrary imposition of difficulty = impose difficulty arbitrarily*.

- [41] What they might have underlined, is the cardinal fact that happiness is in the pursuit itself, in **the meaningful pursuit of** what is life-engaging and life-revealing. (John Ciardi: Is Everybody Happy)
- 他们要强调的或许就是最基本的事实,即幸福来自于追求的本身,来自于对生活的参与和揭示这种有意义的追求。

同样, *the meaningful pursuit of = pursue meaningfully*

(2) **past p. + noun**

- [42] In another experiment at Yale University, Dr. Joan Freyberg ob-

served **improved concentration**. (《大学英语自学教程》)

在耶鲁大学的另一个实验中,琼博士观察到注意力有了提高。

我们可以看到,这里过去分词加抽象名词结构有时等于一个小句的意思。

**improved concentration**. = concentration has been improved

[43] In another experiment at Harvard University, Dr. Jerome Singer found that daydreaming resulted in **improved self-control** and **enhanced creative thinking ability**. (《大学英语自学教程》)

在哈佛大学的另一个实验中,金格博士发现白日梦会提高自我控制的能力和创造性思维的能力。

这里的 improved self-control and enhanced creative thinking ability = self-control has been improved and creative thinking ability has been enhanced.

[44] For that matter, our whole economy is based on a **dedicated insatiability**. (John Ciardi: Is Everybody Happy)

就这个方面,我们所有的经济都建筑在人们永不满足的要求之上的。

a dedicated insatiability = dedicate to being insatiable.

(3) **noun + noun**

[45] At the present rate of **population expansion**, **land depletion**, **reduction** of available water, and **exhaustion** of natural resources, within thirty years this planet will experience **survival tensions** like of which have never existed before. (Developing Reading Skill)

按照目前人口的增长、土地的消耗、可用水的减少和自然资源的耗尽的速度,30年后,这个地球将出现生存的危机,这种情况是过去从未有过的。

这里的 population expansion 和 land depletion 实际上是 the ex-

pansion of population, depletion of land 的另一种表达形式,因此也起到小句作用: population has expanded, land has been depleted.

通过上面这些抽象名词的表现形式,我们可以把它们归纳为与英语基本句型相对应的五种基本 NP 短语模式:

(1) S + V

His escape (= he escaped)

The growth of world population = World population has grown

(2) S + V + O

His control of the environment (He controlled the environment)

His dependence on them (He depended on them)

(3) S + V + O + O

His deny of any opportunity to his opponents. (He denied any opportunity to his opponents.)

(4) S + V + O + C

His election of her as leader. (They elected her as leader.)

(5) S + Be + P

His intelligence (He is intelligent)

His statesmanship (He is a statesman)

The truth of her statement (Her statement is true)

其中第(2)个抽象名词短语模式最为普遍,也最复杂。它有不同的变体。这些变体往往可以进行相互转化,而其意思基本没有什么变化。如:

His denial of our request (= He denied our request)

→The denial of our request by him

→Our request's denial by him

The old man's adoption of him (= The old man adopted him)

→The adoption of him by the old man

→His adoption by the old man

从抽象名词在句子中充当的语法成分来说，它可以是多种的。

(1) 作主语

- [46] **The demand for** continuing education does not take the form that most observers, including this writer, originally expected—namely “Great Books” classes for adults wanting to learn about the humanities, the arts, the “life of the mind.” (《大学英语自学教程》)  
对继续教育的要求不是采取大多数观察者，包括本文作者原来预期的形式——即给想了解人文学科、艺术和心智活动的成年人用“大部头书”上课。

- [47] Women are inferior beings because, in submitting, they open themselves up. **Their inferiority** is constitutional and resides in their sex, their submissiveness, which is a wound that never heals. (Expanding Reading Skill)

妇女低人一等，因为她们顺从，把自己向他人敞开。她们低人一等是体质上的，属于她们的性别和顺从，而这是永远治愈不了的创伤。

- [48] **Stoicism** is the most exalted of our military and political attributes. (Expanding Reading Skill)

自制和克制是最值得赞赏的军事和政治素质。

- [49] They realize that if **the pollution of** air and land and water is allowed to go on, this planet will be uninhabitable. (Developing Reading Skill)

他们意识到如果允许大气、土地和水源的污染继续下去，这个地球就不能为人居住。

常见作主语的抽象名词还有：

her selection of, the analysis of, the invention of, his praise of, the knowledge of, the examination of, the investigation of, his justification

of, the demand of, the pursuit of, his explanation of, a search of, a relaxation of, the receipt of, the arrival of, the abolition of, the growth of, the increase of, the exploration of, his reaction to, his strength/vitality/his willingness/eagerness/variety, simplicity, the richness/abundance of, the vacancy/absence/lack of

## (2) 作宾语

[50] We face instead a **growing demand for** advanced professional education: in engineering and medicine. (《大学英语自学教程》)

相反,我们面临着对高等职业教育日益增长的要求,如工程学和医学。

[51] Several Indian states are drafting legislation that would force the **sterilization of** people who have more than two or three children. (Expanding Reading Skill)

印度好几个省正在立法,迫使有二三个孩子的家庭采取绝育。

[52] Violence on prime-time network TV cultivates exaggerated **assumptions** about the threat of danger in the real world. (Expanding Reading Skill)

电视黄金段时间播出的暴力影片助长了一种不真实的观点,夸大了真实世界里的危险和威胁。

常作宾语的抽象名词和动词搭配有:

cause the loss of, encourage the participation, escape criticism, acknowledge the failure/the truth, anticipate the progress, demand the permission, question the validity, permit the waste of, accelerate the growth of, prevent the publication, favored the withdrawal of, applaud the decision, experience the change, undergo the examination, sustained the loss of, safeguard the freedom of, prove his innocence/ignorance, recognize the seriousness of, lack individuality/flexibility, assert the innocence, realize

the importance of, question the wisdom of, affirm the truth of, confess his ignorance of

(3) 作介词宾语

- [53] Hermeticism is one of the several recourses **of our suspicion and distrust**. (Expanding Reading Skill)

把自己封闭起来是怀疑和不信任所能依赖的方法之一。

- [54] Dr. Weinerman's sharp indictment of the automobile came **in a discussion of** human environment on Yale Reports. (Developing Reading Skill)

据耶鲁大学报告,威因门博士在讨论人文环境时,对小汽车提出了尖锐的批评。

- [55] For the first time in human history, the problem of man's survival has to do **with his control of** man-made hazards. (Developing Reading Skill)

在人类历史上这是第一次,人的生存与其如何控制自己造成的危害直接有关。

- [56] Community demands a place where people can see and know each other, where children can play and adults work together and join **in the pleasures and responsibilities of** the place where they live. (《研究生英语阅读》)

社区要求的是一个人们能够相互看得见和互相了解的地方,孩子们能够一起玩耍,大人一起干活,并能在一起居住的地方共同分享快乐,承担责任。

作介词宾语抽象名词的还有:

with exhaustion/reluctance/curiosity/availability,

in spite of/despite of indifference/resistance/advance/hostility,

for suspicion/criticism/truthfulness,

under consideration/discussion/treatment/pressure/the leadership of,

beyond endurance/recovery/belief/hope,  
because of the ignorance/confusion of 等。

(4) 作表语

在表语位置上,用抽象名词结构是最普遍的了。一般的形式是 be + a + N, 或 be + the + N + of + N

- [57] Demand for education is actually going up, not down. What is going down, and fairly fast, **is demand for** traditional education in traditional schools. (《大学英语自学教程》)

对教育的要求实际上更高,而不是降低了。所下降的,而且降得很快的是对传统学校的传统教育要求。

- [58] Unlike other people, we believe that opening oneself up **is a weakness or a betrayal**. (Expanding Reading Skill)

不像其他人,我们认为把自己向人家敞开是软弱或背叛的表现。

- [59] Throughout history, once a ruling class has established its rule, the primary function of its cultural media has been **the legitimization and maintenance of** its authority. (Expanding Reading Skill)

纵观历史,统治阶级一旦掌权,其文化媒体的主要功能就是使自己的统治合法化并努力维持下去。

- [60] The result has been **the disintegration of** the family until marriages break up at an alarming rate. (Developing Reading Skill)

其结果是家庭分崩离析,情况迅速恶化,直到婚姻解体。

用作表语的抽象名词结构比较常见的还有:

be a reflection of, be an admission of, be an abuse of, be a trial of, be a review of, be a waste of, be a loss of, be the absence of, become a reality

(6) 作定语

抽象名词用作定语的比较少一些。

- [61] They will fight to comply with the **health and safety** standards which have been recommended for the protection of women (Expanding Reading Skill)

他们努力执行为保护妇女而推荐的健康安全标准。

- [62] And I enjoyed the closeness to nature that the **rehabilitation** process required. (Developing Reading Skill)

我喜欢接近大自然,这是恢复身体过程所需要的。

- [63] They are allowed in the United Kingdom under a special concession in the **immigration rules** which allows foreigners to bring domestic staff with them. (《研究生英语阅读》)

英国移民法规的特许条款容许他们携带家仆。

- [64] Candidates try to project a strong **leadership image**. Whether voters accept this image, however, depends more on external factors than on a candidate's personal characteristics. (《大学英语自学教程》)

候选人尽力表现出一种强有力的领导形象。不过,选民是否接受这一形象则更多取决于外部因素,而非候选人的自身个性。

常用的还有:the election result, the entrance examination, irrigation canals, reference book, safety belt, superiority complex, emergency meeting, sickness benefit

## 1.4 抽象名词结构的表达内容

抽象名词的 NP 结构可以表达一个 VP 结构的内容。最早提出这个理论的是丹麦人 O. Jespersen(1924)。他在其所著的《语法哲学》中提出了语结(nexus)理论。他认为所谓的 nexus 是“含有叙述之意的一组词,其中一般包括一个主语以及一个动词,或一个表语,或兼有两者。除此以外,一个语结还可以包含一个或一个以上



的宾语,常常是一个直接宾语和一个间接宾语。”而其中的语结名词(nexus-substantive)就是抽象名词短语。他接着把语结名词分成两大类。第一类是 verbal nexus-word, 即动词性语结词;第二类是 predicative nexus-word 表语性语结词。比如,他举了以下两个例子:

[ 65a] I saw **the doctor's arrival**.

[ 66a] I doubt **the doctor's cleverness**.

他认为这两个语结名词与下面两个句子在意义上是相同的。

[ 65b] I saw that the doctor arrived.

[ 66b] I doubt that the doctor is clever.

也即动词性语结表示的是一个主谓结构或动宾结构的内容;表语性语结表示的是一个表语结构的内容。

语结一般由抽象名词短语组成,但也可以是单个抽象名词组成的语结。如:

[67] The thief gained **admission** through a broken window. (Evans)

小偷是通过窗子进入室内的。

[68] **Activity** leads to **happiness**. (Jespersen)

根据他的观点,语结名词中虽然只有一个行为抽象名词或性质抽象名词,但它们的逻辑主语是隐含的。其主语要么可以从上下文中推断出,如 admission 的逻辑主语是 thief; 要么根据这些名词和主语的习惯搭配,如 activity 和 happiness 的习惯主语是人。

Robert Lees(1960) 也注意到英语抽象名词短语和动词短语之间的相应关系,并且写了一本《英语名词化语法》。他认为抽象名词短语都是从对应句子的深层抽象结构中派生出来的。

[69] Frye's criticism of the book (= Frye criticized the book.)

[70] My annoyance at being bothered (= Being bothered annoys me.)

韩礼德(1994)把这种抽象名词结构称为名词化语法隐喻结构。因为 NP 结构是通过语法结构的转变,隐含了一个 VP 的内

容。韩礼德(1994:344)举了以下例子来说明:

[71a] The guest's supper of ice cream was followed by a gentle swim.

[71b] In the evening the guests ate ice cream and then swam gently.

比较这两句,我们可以看到:

the guests' supper of ice cream = in the evening the guests ate ice cream;  
a gentle swim = swam gently

综上所述,抽象名词结构就内容来说,可以表达一个主谓结构的内容,一个动宾结构的内容,一个偏正结构的内容,一个表语结构的内容,或一个被动结构的内容。

#### 1.4.1 主谓结构:

[72] The discovery of a complete unified theory, therefore, may not aid **the survival of our species**. (《研究生基础英语 II》)

因此,发现一种完整的统一理论或许不会帮助我们人类生存下去。

the survival of our species = our species survive

[73] Contrary to this view, I believe that our present way of life leads to increasing anxiety, helplessness and, eventually, to **the disintegration of our culture**. (《研究生英语阅读》)

与这样的观点相反,我认为,我们目前的生活方式使人们越来越焦虑,越来越感到无助,最后造成我们文化的崩溃。

The disintegration of our culture = our culture disintegrates

[74] The change does not mean **the disappearance of baseball**, merely its relocation to a position as just another game rather than the game. (《研究生英语阅读》)

这个变化并不意味垒球的消失,而是调整它的地位,它不再是惟一的球类游戏,而是另一种游戏。

The disappearance of baseball = baseball has disappeared

[75] This aimed to improve EU competitiveness in world markets by al-

lowing for **the free movement of people and goods** throughout the Union. (《研究生英语阅读》)

其目标是通过允许共同体内的人和货物的自由流动来提高欧洲共同体在世界市场上的竞争力。

- [76] **The amazing growth of career education** in the past several years has been one of the significant developments of American education in the 1970's. (《研究生英语泛读》)

在过去的几年里,职业教育迅速发展,已成为 20 世纪 70 年代美国教育发展最有意义的事。

the amazing growth of career education = career education has grown amazingly

我们可以注意到,在表示主谓结构意思时,这个抽象名词往往是从不及物动词派生来的。再如:

- [77] Psychology does not yet understand even the ordinary processes of conscious thought, but **the emergence of new ideas** by a "leap in thought" is particularly intriguing. (《大学英语诵读文选》)

心理学甚至并不了解有意识思维的一般过程,但是突然间冒出的新想法是特别有趣的。

#### 1.4.2 动宾结构

在[72]中,The discovery of a complete unified theory 就等于 (one)discover a complete unified theory.

- [78] Yet by omitting any **consideration of** the monetary value of home-making, the articles strengthened the widespread attitude that what the unpaid work homemakers do is not an essential factor in the economy. (《研究生基础英语》)

由于这些文章不去考虑家务活的金钱价值,从而支持了这样一种普遍的态度,即干家务不拿工资的人所做的一切在经济中并不是重要的因素。

consideration of the monetary value = consider the monetary value

- [79] **The photographic exploration and duplication** of the world fragments continuities and feeds the pieces into an interminable dossier, thereby providing possibilities of control that could not even be dreamed of under the earlier system of recording information: writing. (《研究生英语精读》)

用照片对世界孤立事件进行探索和复制始终在继续, 并把这些东西归入档案, 这样就提供了控制的可能性, 而这在(过去)早期制度下用写来记录信息的情况甚至是无法想象的。

- [80] Third, career education may be based on a **misreading** of what the leaders of American business really want. (《研究生英语泛读》)  
第三, 职业教育或许是在对美国商界领导人真正所需要的误解之上的。

我们同样注意到: 在表示动宾结构意思时, 这个抽象名词应从及物动词派生或转化而来。再如:

- [81] This initial step in all creation consists in **the establishment of** a new unity from disparate elements, of order out of disorder, of shape from what was formless. (《大学英语诵读文选》)  
创造性思维的第一步就在于从分割的因素中建立新的统一体, 从混乱中建立秩序, 从无定形中建立模式。

- [82] Most said that what they most desire from the schools and colleges is not more vocational education but **elimination of** the serious deficiencies among younger employees in basic skills such as writing, speech, mathematics, computer use, and knowledge of how our government and economy really work. (《研究生英语泛读》)

大多数人说, 他们最希望从学校和大学得到的不是职业教育而是克服年轻雇员中基本技能的严重缺陷如写作、说话、数

学、电脑技术以及我们政府和经济如何运转的知识等。

#### 1.4.3 偏正结构

在 N + of + N 结构中,有两种情况:一种是前一个抽象名词(一般是从形容词派生或转化来的)作为定语,修饰后一个抽象名词。

如:

- [83] The effect was that it reflected back upon the murder a peculiar awfulness and a **depth of solemnity**. (De Quincey)

这个效果是敲门声把一种特别令人畏惧和一种浓厚、庄严的气氛投射在凶手身上。

A depth of solemnity = a deep solemnity

- [84] I handed bags through the window, and we were out on **the dim longness of the platform**. (白汉民)

我从窗口把包递了出去,然后我们出来到了长长的灯光暗淡的站台上。

the dim longness of the platform = the long dim platform

- [85] **The abundance of evidence** indicates that he has very little to do with it. (《研究生英语阅读》)

大量证据表明他和这件事并没有什么关系。

the abundance of evidence = the abundant evidence

- [86] This phrase is supposed to impress us with **the speed and significance of the change** around us. (《研究生英语精读》)

这个词语以发生在我们周围的速度和有意义的变化给我们留下深刻的印象。

the speed and significance of the change around us = the speedy and significant change around us.

- [87] **The wastefulness and extravagance of the plantation system** made no exception of human resources. (《研究生英语泛读》)

庄园制造成了浪费和奢侈,连人力资源也不例外。

The wastefulness and extravagance of the plantation system = wasteful and extravagant plantation system.

- [88] **The harshness and hostility of our environment**, and the hidden, indefinable threat that is always afloat in the air, oblige us to close ourselves in. (Expanding Reading Skill)

恶劣和敌对的环境和周围一直存在着但却看不到、摸不着的威胁迫使我们不敢外出。

- [89] Sir William Osler took this view: he disapproved of people who spoke of the **agony of death**, maintaining that there was no such thing. (Expanding Reading Skill)

威廉·奥斯勒爵士持这样一种观点:他不赞成一些人把死看成是痛苦的事,坚持说没有这样的事。

the agony of death = the agonizing death.

另一种情况是后一个抽象名词(一般是从形容词派生或转化来的)作为定语,修饰前一个名词(这个名词一般是 sense, feeling, level, example 等)。如:

- [90] The growth of American cities between 1860 and 1960 has always been viewed in the United States with **feelings of both pride and dismay**. (《研究生英语阅读》)

在美国,人们在看待 1860 年到 1960 年这 100 年中美国城市的发展时,总有一种既骄傲又失望的心情。

feelings of both pride and dismay = both proud and dismayed feelings

- [91] Before even attempting to answer such questions, we must focus on the **twin forces of acceleration and transience**. (《研究生英语精读》)

在努力回答这些问题时,我们必须集中解决加速和瞬间这两个不可分割的力量。

the twin forces of acceleration and transience = the twin accelerating and

transient forces

- [92] Can he afford to rock his marriage or change his profession? Should he attempt to maintain certain **levels of commitment** unchanged? (《研究生英语精读》)

他能经得起婚姻的破碎和职业的变化? 他是否应该极力保持某种一成不变的承诺?

- [93] Some people achieve a certain **sense of serenity**, even in the midst of turmoil, not because they are immune to emotion, but because they have found ways to get just the **right amount of change** in their lives. (《研究生英语精读》)

有些人能够达到某种宁静感,即使在动荡之中也是如此。这不是因为他们可以不受情感的影响,而是因为他们生活中总能找到合适的变化方式。

- [94] Virtually no latitude is permitted to individuality or **the milder forms of eccentricity**. (《研究生英语精读》)

实际上没有一点自由可以是个性的东西,或稍微有点古怪的东西。

- [95] Does the physical advantage of men doom women to **a life of servility and subservience**? (《研究生英语泛读》)

难道男人的体力优势就可以使妇女一辈子过屈从和恭顺的生活?

- [96] So we have come to cash this check—a check that will give us upon demand **the riches of freedom and the security of justice**. (I Have a Dream)

所以我们才来要求兑现这张支票,一张为我们兑现自由财富和正义保障的支票。

#### 1.4.4 表语结构

- [97] Nature has provided men and women with the capacity for sexual ex-

citement; but excitement in consumption, whether it is of sex or any other commodity, is not the same as **aliveness and richness of experience**. (《研究生英语阅读》)

大自然给予男男女女获得性兴奋的能力,但是,消费带来的兴奋,无论是性还是其他商品,是不能和生气勃勃和丰富多彩的人生经历同日而语的。

aliveness and richness of experience = experience is alive and rich

- [98] In **its easiness** of grammatical construction, in **its paucity** of inflection, in its almost total disregard of the distinctions of gender excepting those of nature, in **the simplicity and precision** of its terminations and auxiliary verbs, not less than in **the majesty, vigor and copiousness** of its expression, our mother tongue seems well adapted by organization to become the language of the world. (《研究生英语阅读》)

其语法结构之容易、屈折变化之少、对名词性的区分几乎不考虑,词尾和助动词之简单和准确,以及表达之壮丽、之生动、之丰富,使我们的母语很好地系统化地成为世界语。

连续几个抽象名词结构可以用表语结构来表达: grammatical construction is easy; inflection is rare; its terminations and auxiliary verbs are simple and precise; its expression is majestic, vigorous and copious.

- [99] Science is linked somehow to **the despair of the twentieth-century mind**. (《研究生英语精读》)

科学与 20 世纪人们思想的绝望感多少有点关系。

- [100] **The explosion of information and the escalating obsolescence of information** is forcing upon higher education a new set of demands. (《研究生英语泛读》)

信息的大量激增和信息的飞速淘汰给高等教育提出了一系列新的要求。



the explosion of information = information is explosive

the obsolescence of information = information is obsolescent.

[101] Even biologists choose to think this about themselves, despite the evidence of **the absolute inevitability of death**. (Expanding Reading Skill)

生物学家甚至选择自己来思考这一点,尽管有证据表明死是不可避免的。

the absolute inevitability of death = death is absolutely inevitable

[102] **His richness of sympathy** made him a symbol to an age. It carried his ideas beyond their scientific setting. (《高级翻译教程》)  
他富有同情心,这使他成为一个时代的象征。他的同情心使他的思想超越了科学的境界。

his richness of sympathy = he is rich in sympathy

#### 1.4.5 被动结构

“也就是说,有些抽象名词结构表达的是被动意思。请比较:

[103a] The place deserves to be visited.

[103b] The place deserves a visit.

这地方值得参观。

[104] The loss of a job **is rejection**, resulting in the same hurt feeling as if a friend had told you to “bug off.” (《研究生英语阅读》)  
失去工作也即被抛弃,所造成的感情伤害等于是一个朋友叫你滚。

rejection = being rejected

[105] Constant references to the staff as “family” only accentuate **the feeling of desertion and deception**. (《研究生英语阅读》)

不断提到一起工作的同事似一家人,只会突出一种被抛弃、被欺骗的感觉。

The feeling of desertion and deception = a deserted and deceptive feeling.

- [106] During **his employment** on the railroad, an accident occurred which made him partially deaf for life. (《研究生英语精读》)  
在他受雇于铁路工作时,一个意外的事故使他一辈子成为半聋人。

his employment = he was employed

- [107] The intent of neither the public nor the educators had changed, but immediate realities sometimes forced **the dilution of college-preparatory courses**. (《研究生英语精读》)  
公众和教育工作者的目的都没有变,但眼前的现实有时迫使大学预备课程不得不削减。

forced the dilution of college-preparatory courses = forced college-preparatory courses to be diluted.

- [108] **Ethiopia's betrayal** left American internationalists in a sea of uncertainty and despondency. (《英文翻译技巧》)  
埃塞俄比亚的被出卖使美国的国际派陷于迷惘和消沉之中。

## 1.5 抽象名词结构的语体意义

英语中的抽象名词结构可以出现在任何体裁的文章中。但只要稍微留心观察一下,我们会发现抽象名词结构出现在正式文体中要比在非正式语体中多。尤其是在词汇密集型的科技文章和学术论文中,这种结构相当普遍。我们这里选择了三个语篇来进行剖析:(1)科技语体,正式程度最高;(2)议论文语体,属正式程度;(3)一般语体,即介于正式文体和非正式文体之间。为了使对比比较客观,选择的每个语篇在140—180词之间(不以句子多少选择,因为非正式语体里的句子短小,在同样多的词数里句子数肯定是多的)。

## 语篇 (1)

1) In this same section there should be an **explanation** of the **significance** —social, economic, medical, psychological, educational, etc. —of the question; in other words, why the investigation was worth conducting. 2) Thus, if we set out, for example, to answer the question “What is the **effect** of regular **consumption** of fast foods on the health of the American teenager?” we must explain that the question is thought to have significant **relevance** to the health of this segment of the population and might lead to some sort of **regulations** on such foods.

3) A frequent subsection of this problem section is a **review** of past research on the topic being investigated. 4) This would consist of **summaries** of the **contributions** of previous researchers to the question under consideration with some **assessment** of the **value** of these contributions. 5) This subsection has rhetorical **usefulness** in that it enhances the **credibility** of the researcher by indicating that the data presented is based on a thorough **knowledge** of what has been done in the field and, possibly, grows out of some investigative tradition.

《大学英语第六册》

## 语篇 (2)

1) These myths and many others are shattered by our **discovery** of the true Chinese **origins** of many of the things, all around us, which we take for granted. 2) Some of our greatest achievements turn out to have been not achievements at all, but simple borrowings. 3) Yet there is no reason for us to feel inferior or downcast at the **realization** that much of the genius of mankind's **advance** was Chinese rather than European. 4) For it is exciting to realize that the East and the West are not as far apart

in spirit or in fact as most of us have been led, by appearances, to believe, and that the East and the West are already combined in a synthesis so powerful and so profound that it is all-pervading. 5) Within this synthesis we live our daily lives, and from it there is no **escape**. 6) The modern world is a **combination** of Eastern and Western ingredients which are inextricably fused. 7) The fact that we are largely unaware of it is perhaps one of the greatest cases of historical **blindness** in the **existence** of the human race.

(《21 世纪大学英语第四册》)

### 语篇 (3)

1) Motivate your partners. 2) Money and **ownership** alone aren't enough. 3) Constantly, day by day, think of new and more interesting ways to motivate and challenge your partners. 4) Set high goals, encourage **competition**, and then keep score. 5) Make bets with outrageous payoffs. 6) If things get stale, cross-pollinate; have managers switch jobs with one another to stay challenged. 7) Keep everybody guessing as to what your next trick is going to be. 8) Don't become too predicable.

9) Communicate everything you possibly can to your partners. 10) The more they know, the more they'll understand. 11) The more they understand, the more they'll care. 12) Once they care, there's not stopping them. 13) If you don't trust your associates to know what's going on, they'll know you don't really consider them partners. 14) Information is power, and the **gain** you get from empowering your associates more than offsets the **risk** of informing your competitors.

(《21 世纪大学英语第四册》)

统计表

语篇	1	2	3
词数	172	182	146
句子数/平均长度	5/34.4	7/26	14/10.4
NP 结构/比例(%)	14/51.8	8/32	3/8.1
VP 结构/比例(%)	13/48.1	17/68	34/91.9

通过各种语体中抽象名词的调查,我们发现:1) 抽象名词表达的多少和语体正式程度高低有关,语体的正式程度越高,抽象名词表达越多;2) 抽象名词表达在现代英语中出现频率是比较高的,在一般语体中也有一定比例。正如美国语法学家寇姆(1931)在他的《句法》中指出的“英语现在有一种明显的趋向,人们往往用名词而不用动词来表达谓语部分的主要内容”。在不少正式语体中,抽象名词的使用密度相当高,甚至出现抽象名词表达的集结,在一个短短的句子中可以集结好几个。

- [108] The signs of the times point to **the necessity of the modification** of the system of administration. (Times)

我们这个时代有迹象表明管理体制有必要进行改革。

- [109] There seems to have been **an absence of attempt at conciliation** between rival sects. (Daily Telegraph)

对立的两个派别似乎从来就没有意愿去谋求和解。

- [110] No year passes now without **evidence of the truth** of the statement that the work of government is becoming increasingly difficult. (Spectator)

行政管理工作已变得越来越难,每年都有证据表明这种说法是正确的。

- [111] All peace-loving people demand **the complete prohibition and thorough destruction of** nuclear weapons. (《英译汉理论与实践》)

一切爱好和平的人民都要求全面禁止核武器,彻底销毁核武器。

- [112] It was only my **capacity for** hard work that saved me from early **dismissal**. (《英译汉理论与实践》)

要不是我能干重活,早就给辞退了。

- [113] Roofs require special **consideration** to ensure **adequate durability** in relation to the **exposure** to the sun and rain. (《英译汉理论与实践》)

屋顶需要加以特别考虑,以确保经受日晒雨淋。

- [114] Aggression took many forms: the unilateral **denunciation** of treaties and international commitments, **interference** in the internal affairs of other states, the **use** of threats against weaker neighbors, the **imposition** of unequal relationships, outright armed **attack** against the territories of other states and their **dismemberment**, the **subjugation of** colonial peoples and **the denial** of the right of self-determination and fundamental human rights. (《英语理解和翻译讲话》)

侵略有许多形式:单方面废除条约与国际义务,干涉别国内政,对较弱邻国实施威胁,强迫实行不平等关系,赤裸裸武装进攻和肢解别国领土,征服殖民地民族,否认自决权和基本人权。

即使是在口语语体中,抽象名词也有它的地位。

- [115] "She might have the **decency** not to telephone him at dinner time. Don't you think?" (《现代英语表达与理解》)

“她应该有点礼貌,知道不应在吃饭时间打电话给他。是不是这样?”

下面的句子,意思相同,人们在口语中往往倾向于用[a]的抽象名词表达:

[116a] Don't **jump to conclusion**, Rob. How do you know? (Shaw)

[116b] Don't conclude hastily, Rob. How do you know?

不要急于得出结论, 罗伯。你怎么会知道呢?

[117a] I don't want to **run the risk** of meeting George. (DCE)

[117b] I don't want to risk meeting George.

我不想冒碰见乔治的危险。

在一般非正式语体的书信中, 人们也倾向于[a]的抽象表达:

[118a] On **arrival** at your hotel,

On **completion** of the experiment, please write to me.

During your **absence**.

[118b] When you arrive at your hotel,

When you have completed the experiment, please write to me.

While you are absent.

英语中不少名句, 谚语等大都是用抽象名词来表达的:

[119] Studies serve for **delight**, for **ornament** and for **ability**. (Bacon)

读书足以冶情, 足以博彩, 足以长才。

[120] **Poverty** is the root of all evils. (Mark Twain)

贫穷是一切罪恶的根源。

[121] The **talent of success** is nothing more than doing well whatever you do without a thought of fame. (Longfellow)

成功之道没有别的, 就是做好你所从事的工作, 不存沽名钓誉之心。

[122] **Brevity** is the soul of wit. (Shakespeare)

简洁是机智的灵魂。

[123] The secret of success is **constancy of purpose**.

成功之秘诀在于目标之有恒心。

[124] **Happiness** consists in **contentment**.

幸福在于知足。

## 第二章 抽象名词的修辞功能

为什么同样可以用动词结构来表达的内容,却要改用 NP 的抽象名词结构?抽象名词结构的表达在文章中具有什么样的修辞功能?

### 2.1 简洁

抽象名词最大的修辞功能莫过于其表达的简练性。这种简洁性是由于其内在结构所决定的。

一、根据 O. Jespersen (1924) 的观点, 英语抽象名词的 NP 短句结构表达了一个含有谓语或表语的 VP 结构的小句内容。R. Quirk (1985) 在《英语语法大全》中列举了一个例子, 认为 [1 a] 和 [1 b] 表达的是同一个意思:

[1 a] Lanzarotti was disappointed by **the fact the reviewers criticized his play in a hostile manner.**

[1 b] Lanzarotti was disappointed by **the reviewers' hostile criticism of his play.**

显然, 抽象名词结构要比小句简练多了。句子受语法的限制, 主谓宾成分要齐全, 但抽象名词没有这个限制, 也就是说, 名词结构为简化句子结构, 避免重复创造了条件。

[2 a] He is a demanding taskmaster, expecting **that they are totally loyal and dedicated. And for the most part his expectation is fulfilled.**

[2 b] He is a demanding taskmaster, expecting, **and for the most part getting, total loyalty and dedication.** (《现代英语表达与理解》)



他像苛刻的工头一样,总是要求手下的人忠心耿耿,鞠躬尽瘁,而这个要求多半倒也能实现。

用了抽象名词结构,两个动词“expect”,“get”可以一起支配抽象名词 loyalty and dedication。但用动词结构 they are totally loyal and dedicated,则成为两句。

[2a] He spends nearly 3 hours on watching sports events. **The fact that he was completely absorbed in sport** interfered with his studies.

[2b] He spends nearly 3 hours on watching sports events. **His complete absorption** interfered with his studies.

在上文已提到 sports 的情况下,用抽象名词结构 his complete absorption 可以避免重复 sports,但是在句子情况下,用 be completely absorbed 动词结构, sports 却不能省。

二、由于英语抽象名词大都是从动词或形容词派生来的,而每个动词或形容词都有自己习惯的搭配,有自己常见的主语或宾语,因此单个抽象名词往往隐含着其逻辑主语或宾语,尽管它们不出现,但读者根据抽象名词的对应动词或形容词的惯用搭配,可以理解其意思。换句话说,单个抽象名词往往隐含一个非常丰富的意思。

[3] It was sharply different from the West, where an evening was hurried from phase to phase toward its close, in a continually disappointed **anticipation** or else in sheer nervous **dread** of the moment itself.

这种情况跟我在西部所见习的截然不同。在西部,晚间社交活动总是匆匆而过直到结束,每一阶段,参加者总是期望着,希望好的还在后头,而到临头总难免失望,要不然就是每时每刻都感到局促不安。

anticipation 的习惯搭配是人,盼望的东西大多数是好的。因此单个抽象名词把这个意思都包含进去了(而如用动词结构, anticipate 是及物动词,一定要有具体的主语和宾语出现)。抽象名词

dread 同样是这个情况。原文不出现逻辑主语,但不妨碍理解。

- [4] Naples is far dirtier, and so are Bombay and countless other cities, but a **tolerance** for dirt seems to grow where **fondness** exists. (《研究生英语泛读》)

那不勒斯更脏,孟买和其他不计其数的城市同样如此。但人们似乎越来越能够容忍肮脏,而他们对这些城市的感情依旧。

tolerance 和 fondness 的习惯主语是人,因此不加 people's,读者也能理解。

- [5] Vienna almost suffocates the Viennese with care, Paris manages to imbue her own with **an obsession for their fulfillment**. (《研究生基础英语 II》)

维也纳对市民的关怀几乎使他们窒息。而巴黎努力向市民灌输一种精神,即不屈不挠去追求和实现自己的理想。

fulfillment 的隐含意思在英语中就是指“实现自己的理想或抱负”、“发挥自己的能力”,因此用了单个抽象名词,原来的 fulfill oneself, fulfill one's desire/dream 就简化了。

韩礼德把这种简化现象称之为高级阶的表达形式向低级阶表达形式转变(down in rank)。简单地说就是复合句向简单句、短语转变。下面我们分类看看抽象名词结构是如何简化语言阶的单位的。

### 2.1.1 替代名词从句

- [5a] We were greatly disappointed to find **that she was absent**.  
[5b] We were greatly disappointed **at her absence**. (《英文疑难详解》)

她没有出席会议,我们深感失望。

- [6a] The chairman said he appreciated **the way that the staff and the workpeople had been loyal**.

- [6b] The chairman expressed his appreciation **of the loyalty of the staff and the workpeople**. (Frederick)

主席对工作人员和工人的忠诚服务表示感谢。

例[6a]两个小句结构——he appreciated the way(宾语从句), that the staff and the workpeople had been loyal(同位语从句)——被[6b]两个名词短语结构——his appreciation, of the loyalty 所替代,意思没有变,而句意明晰了。原来句子结构从句套从句,冗长拖沓。抽象名词结构的使用使句子紧凑多了。

[7a] We can not be satisfied as long as **what the Negro can basically move** is from a smaller ghetto to a large one.

[7b] We can not be satisfied as long as **the Negro's basic mobility** is from a smaller ghetto to a large one. (I Have a Dream)

我们不能满足黑人的基本流动,只是从一个较小的黑人区到一个较大的黑人区。

[8a] I will not have it said that I could never teach my daughter how to properly respect her elders.

[8b] I will not have it said that I could never teach my daughter **proper respect** for her elders. (《英汉翻译基础》)

我可不愿意让人家指着脊梁骨说我从来不教自己的女儿要尊敬长辈。

[9a] Manliness is judged according to **whether one is invulnerable** to enemy arms or the impacts of the outside world.

[9b] Manliness is judged according to **one's invulnerability** to enemy arms or the impacts of the outside world. (Expanding Reading Skill)

阳刚之气是根据一个人能否抵制住敌人的武器和外部世界的影响来判断的。

### 2.1.2 替代同位语从句

用名词结构替代同位语从句来表达同样的内容可以使结构紧凑。从例[6b]中我们已经看到了其效果。再举几例:

[10a] **The fact that we lack manners which are standardized** results

in an often angry, chaotic society.

- [10b] **The lack of standardization of manners** results in an often angry, chaotic society. (《21 世纪大学英语 4》)

缺少对礼貌的标准化会导致一个充斥愤怒与混乱的社会。

- [11a] This is a further evidence **that civil rights have been eroded in South Africa.**

- [11b] This is a further evidence **of the erosion of civil right in South Africa.** (《现代英语表达与汉语对应》)

这是在南非民权遭受侵害的又一证据。

- [12a] In a series of articles entitled “Women at Work”, a financial newspaper presented much well-researched factual information **that increasingly women had participated in the labor market.**

- [12b] In a series of articles entitled “Women at Work”, a financial newspaper presented much well-researched factual information about **women’s increased participation** in the labor market. (《研究生英语阅读》)

在以“工作中的妇女”为题目的一系列文章中，一份财经报纸提供了经过仔细研究得出的事实，即越来越多的妇女参加了工作。

### 2.1.3 替代不定式小句

- [13a] Recourse to arms is not **the best way to solve** a quarrel between countries.

- [13b] Recourse to arms is not **the best solution** to a quarrel between countries (《牛津现代高级英汉双解词典》)

诉诸武力不是解决国与国之间纠纷的最好办法。

这里的不定式短语 the best way to solve 用名词 the best solution 来表达了。

[14a] Within the confines of the women's liberationist ideology, therefore, **to abolish this overriding inequality** of women becomes the primary goal.

[14b] Within the confines of the women's liberationist ideology, therefore, **the abolition of this overriding inequality** of women becomes the primary goal. (《研究生英语泛读》)

因此,在妇女解放意识的范围内,消除这一对妇女最大不平等成为我们的首要目标。

[15a] Voluntary premarital testing for AIDS is **to protect** both partners and for the uncontaminated and unborn children.

[15b] Voluntary premarital testing for AIDS is **a protection** for both partners and for the uncontaminated and unborn children. (《研究生英语精读》)

婚前艾滋病的自愿检查是为了保护婚姻双方和未出世、未受感染的孩子。

[16a] He was so ruthless in his destruction of the crops that **to supervise them carefully** was necessary to insure their survival until harvest time.

[16b] He was so ruthless in his destruction of the crops that **the most careful supervision** was necessary to insure their survival until harvest time. (《研究生英语泛读》)

在毁灭庄稼方面他是如此的残忍,因此进行最仔细的监督对于确保庄稼的生存直到收获是十分必要的。

#### 2.1.4 替代状语从句

[17a] **If you want to investigate** the relative effectiveness of various swim-stroke, you would have to detail **the number** of swimmers tested.

[17b] **An investigation of** the relative effectiveness of various swim-

strokes would have to detail the number of swimmers tested.  
(College English 6)

倘若要研究各种游泳姿势的相应效果,就必须说清楚游泳测试的人数。

语法学上把[17b]称为隐含条件句,因为句中虽没有条件句的语言形式“if”,但是其中的名词结构 an investigation of 就表达了这样的内容。再比较下面两句:

[18a] **if we examine** all the variables in the test, we concluded that the unusually good results were due to the way he had handled the mice.

[18b] **An examination of** all the variables in the test concluded that the unusually good results were due to the way he had handled the mice. (《21 世纪大学英语 4》)

若检查实验中所有的变量,就可得出结论:这些异常好的结果归结于他对待老鼠的态度。

[19a] **If she contacts closely with students**, she might risk contagion from students, that great unwashed mass.

[19b] **Any closer contact** might mean she would risk contagion from students, that great unwashed mass. (《21 世纪大学英语 4》)

和学生接触过密很可能意味着她有受到学生,那一大帮无知者传染的危险。

[20a] Yet all of history has taught us that **if we deny** these ultimates and **if we place** man or state at the core of the universe, it would result in a paralyzing mass selfishness.

[20b] Yet all of history has taught us that **the denial of** these ultimates, **the placement of** man or state at the core of the universe, results in a paralyzing mass selfishness. (College English 5)

然而全部历史告诫我们,如否认这些基本原理,把个人或国

家置于宇宙的中心,就会导致整个世界陷于瘫痪的、无处不在的自私自利状态。

[21a] **If** an official of the Government shows **discourtesy** to Chinese persons, he will be immediately dismissed.

[21b] **Any discourtesy** shown to Chinese persons by any official of the Government will be cause for immediate dismissal(《英译汉理论与实例》)

如果政府官员中有谁表示对中国人不礼貌,他就会被立即解除职务。

[22a] Each day is a holiday, and ordinary holidays when they come are grudging **because they interrupt** an absorbing vocation forcibly.

[22b] Each day is a holiday, and ordinary holidays when they come are grudging as **enforced interruptions** in an absorbing vocation. (《新概念英语 4》)

每天都是一个假日,而当真正普通的假日来到时,总是受到抱怨,认为它们强行打断了引人入胜的工作。

[23a] They constantly declare in interviews that they choose their clothes **because they are easy, comfortable, convenient and practical.**

[23b] They constantly declare in interviews that they choose their clothes **for ease, comfort, convenience and practicality.** (《研究生英语泛读》)

他们在面试中不停地宣称,他们选择这些服装是因为这些服装舒适、方便又实用。

#### 2.1.5 替代定语从句

抽象名词和实词搭配往往具有定语从句的作用。请比较:

[24a] These hearings must start us along the road toward solutions to the underlying conditions which afflict our cities, so that they may be-

come **the places where we may fulfil ourselves and enjoy ourselves and lead a easy, comfortable life**, the communities they were meant to be.

- [24b] These hearings must start us along the road toward solutions to the underlying conditions which afflict our cities, so that they may become **the places of fulfillment and ease, comfort and joy**, the communities they were meant to be. (《研究生英语 II》)

这些审讯使我们开始找出解决困扰我们城市基础设施的方法, 这样它们就可成为能够实现愿望、获得乐趣、过舒适生活的地方, 成为它们本该这样的社区。

#### 2.1.6 替代句子

有时候抽象名词结构能代替整个小句。

- [25a] Japanese corporations were also reluctant about investing overseas until **the government relaxed its restrictions in the late 1960s, and the value of the yen increased rapidly**, with the growing shortage of domestic labor and indigenous natural resources.

- [25b] Japanese corporations were also reluctant about investing overseas until **the relaxation of government restrictions in the late 1960s, and the rapid increase in the value of the yen**, with the growing shortage of domestic labor and indigenous natural resources. (《研究生英语 II》)

日本的各大公司过去一直不愿投资海外, 直到 20 世纪 60 年代后期, 日本政府放松限制, 日元迅速增值, 加上国内劳动力和本地资源的日益短缺, 情况才发生了变化。

Until 后面可以跟句子也可以跟短语。用了抽象名词结构, 整个句子的结构就简练多了。



## 2.2 生动

按理说 NP 名词结构表示静态,而 VP 动词结构表示的是动态。但抽象名词通过与表示人的动作的动词搭配,往往能使句子活起来,给人一种动觉形象感。如:

arrive at a conclusion/ a decision/ an understanding,

fly into a temper/ a passion,

jump at an chance/ an invitation,

escape the boredom/criticism/memory,

[26] Yet the true function of sleep and dreaming continues to **elude precise explanation**. (《大学英语自学教程(下)》)

然而对睡眠和做梦的真正功能还是无法做出精确的解释。

句中的 elude(躲避,逃避)一般用于描写人,现在与抽象名词 explanation 搭配,就使句子有了形象感。再如:

[27] Large public protests of years before have largely vanished mainly because of recognition that today's complex problems ranging from soaring inflation to rampant corruption **defy ready solutions**. (《大学英语写作表达词典》)

前几年出现过的大规模公开示威游行基本上没有了。这主要是因为人们认识到:今天从通货膨胀到腐败风气等复杂问题是容易解决的。

这里的 defy(公然反抗,不服)和例[26]的 elude 有同样的修辞效果,由于 defy 和 description, comprehension, imitation, explanation 这些抽象名词的搭配使用因而增加句子的活力。下面的 resist rational analysis 是同样道理。

[28] This new disease can be called "future shock," and a knowledge of its sources and symptoms helps explain many things that otherwise **resist rational analysis**. (《研究生英语精读》)

这种新的疾病可以被称之为“未来冲击”，了解它的起源和症状有助于解释许多原本无法理性分析的事。

我们可以看到这种形象往往带有比喻和拟人的修辞色彩。

- [29] It (a five-day week) has **found an immediate welcome and much popularity** ever since. (《英语十句作文法》)

5天工作制立即受到了人们的普遍欢迎和拥护。

- [30] Rockets have **found application for the exploration** of the universe.

火箭已用于探索宇宙。

- [31] Europe has **entered into their inheritance**, producing an ecumenical universal science and technology valid for every man and woman on the face of the earth. (《21世纪大学英语4》)

欧洲继承了这些国家的遗产，创造出了一种地球上人人都能使用的世界性的科学技术。

- [32] In Cuba I studied Spanish and learned to speak it a little, though in later years it **escaped my memory**. (《英译汉理论与实例》)

我在古巴学了西班牙语，也会讲上几句，然而，没有几年就忘光了。

可能由于这样的搭配经常使用，所以显得已不那么新鲜了，我们也就体会不到 *defy the solution of*, *find an welcome in*, *escape the notice of* 这些抽象名词表达的拟人修辞效果。类似的还有：*jump to a conclusion*, *enjoy the increase*, *lay the foundation for*, *run the risk* 等，都有这样的拟人色彩。

- [33] A writer who introduces material that is not directly related to a paragraph's topic **runs the risk** of losing his reader. (American English Rhetoric)

作者写进书中的材料如果和段落的主题句没有直接关系，就有可能失去读者的危险。

还有一些抽象名词的搭配也有这样的形象感。如：

- [34] If the very originators of the inventions and discoveries no longer claim them, and if even **their memory of them has faded**, why should their inheritors trouble to resurrect their lost claims? (《21世纪大学英语 4》)

如果发明者和发现者本人不再要求这些发明和发现的所有权,如果连他们对这些发明和发现的记忆都已逐渐淡去,他们的继承人又何必费神要求恢复他们失去的所有权呢?

fade(褪色,凋谢)一般和 flower, color 搭配,现在和抽象名词 memory 搭配,抽象性的东西就具体化起来了。

语法隐喻和词汇隐喻是紧密联在一起的。抽象名词和一些形象性的具体名词搭配成 N + of + N 的抽象名词结构,就形成了综合隐喻表达法,使语言表达更为生动。如:

- [35] They wore their laurels gracefully, withstood **the awful weather of publicity**, married excellent women, usually of fine family, and quietly retired to private life and the enjoyment of their varying fortunes. (《研究生英语精读》)

他们优雅地戴着桂冠,承受着被人频频曝光的恶劣环境,和背景优越的美女结婚,最后悄悄地隐退,享受着接踵而来的好运。

这里的 the awful weather of publicity, 实际上就是综合隐喻的用法。

- [36] And yet, while most of us are only too ready to apply to others **the cold wind of criticism**, we are somehow reluctant to give our fellow **the warm sunshine of praise**. (《大学英语第二册》)

然而,我们大多数人都动不动就对别人刮起批评的寒风,而不知为什么却不愿把表扬的温暖阳光给予我们的同伴。

- [37] He builds a **wall of indifference and remoteness** between reality and himself, a wall that is no less impenetrable for being invisible.

(Expanding Reading Skill)

他在现实和自己之间造起了一堵冷漠和疏远的墙,而这堵墙由于是无形的,所以难以穿透。

马丁·路德·金在其著名的演说“I Have a Dream”中就是大量运用这种隐喻,使得他的演说格外生动有力。

- [38] One hundred years later, the life of the Negro is still sadly crippled by the **manacle of segregation and the chains of discrimination**. One hundred year later, the Negro lives on a **lonely island of poverty** in the midst of a **vast ocean of material prosperity**. (I Have a Dream)

100年以后的今天,黑人的生活仍然悲惨地套着种族隔离的枷锁和种族歧视的镣铐。100年以后的今天,黑人依然生活在贫穷的孤岛上,而它周围却是物质繁荣的辽阔海洋。

- [39] Now is the time to rise from the **dark and desolate valley of segregation to the sunlit path of racial justice**. Now is the time to open the **door of opportunity** to all of God's children. Now is the time to lift our nation from the **quicksands of racial injustice to the solid rock of brotherhood**. (I Have a Dream)

现在是从种族隔离这一黑暗凄凉的山谷走上种族公平的金光大道的时候;现在是为上帝所有的儿女打开机会之门的时候;现在是把我们的国家从种族不公平的流沙中拔出来,使之立足于兄弟情谊的坚固岩石之上的时候。

- [41] This **sweltering summer of the Negro's legitimate discontent** will not pass until there is an **invigorating autumn of freedom and equality**. (I Have a Dream)

在一个充满了自由平等的凉爽的秋天出现之前,黑人表示不满的这一闷热的夏天将不会过去。

- [42] I have a dream that one day even the state of Mississippi, a desert

state sweltering with **the heat of injustice and oppression**, will be transformed into an **oasis of freedom and justice**. (I Have a Dream)

我梦想有一天,即使像密西西比州这样一个充满了不公和压迫的酷热难熬的沙漠州也会变成一个自由和正义的绿洲。

在这篇著名的演说中,还有类似的抽象名词的隐喻表达:

the flames of withering injustice 毁灭性的非正义的烈焰; the long night of captivity 囚禁生活的漫漫长夜; the bank of justice 正义的银行; the tranquilizing drug of gradualism 渐进主义的镇静剂; the bright day of justice 正义的灿烂之日; the palace of justice 正义之宫; the cup of bitterness and hatred 仇恨的苦酒。

## 2.3 变化

英语遣词造句最忌讳重复,篇章中如多次提及相同的意思,那么同义词、上下义词等往往用来追求变化。抽象名词也具有这样的功能。抽象名词的意义一般说来比较笼统,概括性大,正是这个特点,它往往能够替代一些具体复杂的说法。尤其在篇章中,当两次提到同一事时,第一次用具体,较确切的说法,第二次则可以用抽象名词替代,从而避免重复性。如:

[44] In other words, **he was not ready to join** the Nixon team, but if they wanted to call him from time to time, **his expertise would be available**. Why such an extraordinary leap, literally overnight, from overt **antagonism** to qualified **accessibility**? (《现代英语表达与理解》)

换句话说,他不准备参加尼克松的竞选班子;但如果他们想经常找他,他愿意提供他的专业知识。为什么几乎一夜之间就发生这样一个不寻常的飞跃,从对立变为肯提供有限的帮助了呢?

antagonism 和 accessibility 这两个抽象名词意思笼统,其确切要表达的就是 he was not ready to join the Nixon team 和 his expertise would be available. 显然用了抽象名词就避免了重复。

- [45] **Red-light running** has always been ranked as a minor wrong, and so it may be in individual instances. When **the violation** become habitual, widespread and incessant, however, a great deal more than a traffic management problem is involved. (《英美报刊文选》)

闯红灯常常被列为小错,因而似乎只是个别情况。然而,一旦人们形成习惯,事故累累,随处皆是,问题则远非止于交通管理而已。

violation 这个抽象名词表示的意思是笼统和虚泛的,可以指任何的违反,犯规。但在这个上下文里指“闯红灯”是很清楚的。通过使用抽象名词,避免在较短的篇幅中重复“red-light running”。

- [46] Why do food prices keep on rising, when there seems to be **so much more food** about? Is **the abundance** only temporary, or has it come to stay? (CET1991年6月试卷)

为什么粮食似乎这么富足,而粮价不断上升?是不是粮食充裕是暂时的或一直会如此?

第一句用了“so much more food”,紧接着的一句再用同样的说法就显不妥,改用抽象名词 abundance,并不会造成误会,理解成一般的“丰富”。

- [47] Potential AIDS victims who refuse to be tested for the disease and then defend their right to **remain ignorant about whether they carry the virus are entitled to that right**. But **ignorance** cannot be used to rationalize irresponsibility. (《研究生英语精读》)

有可能患艾滋病的人拒绝测试,声称他们有权无须知道他们是否携带艾滋病毒,他们有权利这样做,但是这种不想知道

的做法不能用来使他们的不负责任合理化。

这里的 ignorance 就是 remain ignorant about whether they carry the virus are entitled to that right 的另一种说法。显然单个抽象名词不会给读者带来任何理解困难。

- [48] Somewhere or other—I think it is in the preface to Saint Joan—Bernard Shaw remarks that **we are more gullible and superstitious today than we were in the Middle Ages**, and as an example of **modern credulity** he cites the widespread belief that the earth is round. (《大学英语 4》)

记得在什么地方——我想是在《圣女贞德》序言中——萧伯纳评论说，今天我们比在中世纪时更加轻信，更加迷信。而作为现代轻信的例证，他举出地圆说这一广为传播的信念。

这里的 modern credulity 就是 we are more gullible and superstitious today than we were in the Middle Ages 的意思。

再看一例综合性的句子。

- [49] Lies also do harm to those who tell them; harm to their **integrity** and, in the long run, to their **credibility**. **The suspicion of deceit** undercuts the work of the many doctors who are scrupulously honest with their patients. (《大学英语 4》)

谎言也损害说谎的人，损害他们的诚实，并最终损害了他们的信誉。由于病人怀疑医生有欺骗行为，因而许多医生对病人十分开诚公布的工作也受到影响。

这里的 deceit 就是 lies 的同义词；而 integrity 和 credibility 就是 doctors who are scrupulously honest with their patients 的另一说法。显然抽象名词的词汇变化功能是毫无疑问的。

## 2.4 平衡

根据语法学家 Quirk 的观点，英语造句必须遵循“尾重”(end-

weight)的原则,即在安排句内成分时要把最笨重的部分安排在句尾,以保持句子的平衡。而英语中有不少不及物动词在其组成的句子中,主语成分一复杂,往往会造成头重脚轻的情况。如: A new pattern of economic growth in backward areas has emerged. 如果用 SVO 这个句型来衡量,主语部分 S 显然过重,而宾语部分 O 几乎是零,句子主谓宾明显不平衡,而运用抽象名词结构往往可以改善这种状况。如:

[50a] Others are the prelude to the fact that **the two or more companies' technologies and capabilities fully merge.**

[50b] Others are the prelude to **a full merger of two or more companies' technologies and capabilities.** (《现代英汉翻译操作》)

另外一些合作则是两个或更多个公司的技术和潜能全面合并的前奏。

原来同位语句中的结构有点不平衡:主语有 8 个词,而宾语只有 2 个词(fully merge)。改用了抽象名词表达后,简化了结构,达到了句子平衡。

[51a] It would be better if the nations and the peoples of the world **understood each other.**

[51b] It would be better if the nations and the peoples of the world **had a clearer understanding of each other.**

如果世界上所有国家和民族都能互相了解,那该多好啊。

我们可以看到,[51b]用了名词结构后,句尾比[51a]增加了 4 个词。

## 2.5 强调

英语当中有这样一种用法:当说到某人或某事具有某种特点或特性时,往往把 Adj. + N 的结构转变为 N + N 的结构,即把 Adj.



转变为相应的 N, 把形容词的偏正结构变成名词偏正结构。如把 his deep hatred, its subtle plot 转为 the depth of his hatred, the subtlety of its plot. 这就把名词从词组中孤立了出来, 既醒目又突出, 起到了强调的作用。请比较:

[52a] While they enjoy **their comfortable luxurious but banal dwelling**, they do not realize that they are deprived of the necessities of life.

[52b] While they enjoy **the comfort and banal luxury of their dwelling**, they do not realize that they are deprived of the necessities of life. (New Concept English 4)

虽然他们享受着舒适和庸俗奢侈的住处, 但他们却被剥夺了生活最必需的东西。

[53a] The growth is continuous and has not slackened in recent times. **The conservative grammarians** has succeeded in arresting only a small proportion of changes.

[53b] The growth is continuous and has not slackened in recent times. **The conservatism of grammarians** has succeeded in arresting only a small proportion of changes. (Psychology of English)

这种变化是不断的, 在近代也没有停滞的迹象, 保守的语法学家只能留住很小一部分变化。

[54] People have a tendency to choose **the safety of the middle-ground reply**. (《现代英语表达与理解》)

人们倾向于选择一种安全的不偏不倚的回答。

原来的 the safe middle-ground reply 改为现在的抽象名词结构, safety 就突出了。

[55] They passed from **the heat and glare** of a big square into a cool, dark cavern. (《现代英语表达与理解》)

他们穿过一条热气灼人、阳光耀眼的宽阔广场, 来到了一个凉快的幽暗大山洞。

按照句法平行的原则应当是 from a *adj.* + *adj.* + N into a *adj.* + *adj.* + N。即: from a hot, glaring square into a cool, dark cavern。用了名词结构, 平行没有了, 但强调了热气和耀眼。

再如:

- [56] Dictionary making does not require brilliance or **originality of mind**. (《现代英汉翻译操作》)

编纂词典并不需要横溢的才华或独创的思维。

- [57] We may enjoy listening to such music, simply basking in **the sheer novelty, even the beauty, of the unfamiliar sounds**. (《研究生基础英语 II》)

我们或许会欣赏听音乐, 即沉浸在新奇、甚至美丽的陌生的声音中。

- [58] No sooner has she delivered her last forgettable word than the Knowledgeable One packs up her notes and shoots out the door, heading back to **the privacy of her office**, where she can pursue her specialized academic interest—free of any possible interruption from students. (《21 世纪大学英语 4》)

她一说完最后那句别人听过就忘的话便收拾好讲稿, 冲出教室门, 向她清静独处的办公室走去。

- [59] An inmate who was known to read a lot could check out more than the permitted maximum number of books. I preferred reading in **the total isolation** of my own room. (《21 世纪大学英语 4》)

一个以读书多而出名的犯人能借出更多超出规定的书。我更喜欢在与外界完全隔绝的自己的房间里读书。

- [60] So we drove along between **the green** of the park and stony lifeless **elegance** of hotels and apartment buildings. (《现代英语表达与理解》)

车子往前开着, 一边是青翠的公园, 另一边是十分呆板、毫无

生气的豪华旅馆和公寓建筑。

## 2.6 衔接

抽象名词虽然也有自身的意义。但一般比较虚泛和含糊,其真正、具体的意思往往有待于它上文或下文来确定。正是这种和上下文有着某种语义被确定和确定的关系,它们就获得了和一般指示代词如 *this, that, it, these* 等相同的属性,即具有很强的篇章衔接连贯的功能。

### 2.6.1 段内中衔接

[61] (... Could he, for instance, learn from animals something about birth control, intercreature relationships, or thought communication that would help him avoid extinction?)

Generally, the first **reaction** to such **musings** is one of **astonishment**. The question phrases itself. What can man, the most highly evolved species of animal life, learn from less developed creatures? (Developing Reading Skills)

其中 *reaction*, *musings*, *astonishment* 都是抽象名词,意义不十分确定。但是它们在段中的衔接功能是显而易见的。首先 *musings*(思考)的具体意思是通过上一段的意思来明确的(考虑一下人类是否可向动物学习一些东西)。正是这种意义即说明被说明的关系把这一段和上一段连贯了起来。*reaction* 是“反应”的意思,但具体是什么反应?从这一句后半部分看是指 *astonishment*(震惊),而 *astonishment* 的具体意思仍然不清楚,它是通过后面一句 *What can man, the most highly evolved species of animal life, learn from less developed creatures?* 来具体明朗化的。显然这几个抽象名词有助于整个段落的语义连贯。

换句话说,这些抽象名词本身的意义并不清楚,也并不重要。它们和指示代词一样只是一种符号,前指时起归纳作用如 *mus-*

ings,后指时起预示作用如 reaction, astonishment,从而在篇章上起到了衔接作用。

实际上一些语言学家早就注意到这些抽象名词的特殊性。如 Francis(1986)在其 Anaphoric Noun 著作中专门把 assertion, answer, assumption, belief, attitude, concept, hypothesis, realization, misconceptions, function 等这类词划出,指出这些词在前面加上 this, the, such 等指示代词后往往能概括或归纳前文的语义,因此它们在篇章中有较强的衔接性前指功能。Francis(1989)进一步解释,“这些前指名词归纳总结了前一话题,为接下来的话题确立了框架”。

[62] He was saying some last word to her, but **the eagerness** in his manner tightened abruptly into formality as several people approached him to say goodbye. (《现代英语表达与理解》)

他似乎还有最后几句话要对她说,刚好有几个客人走过来和他告别,他原先急切的样子马上变得拘谨起来。

显然这里的 the eagerness 就是指 he was saying some last word to her。

[63] It is no use starting late in life to say: “I will take an interest in this or that. **Such an attempt** only aggravates the strain of mental effort.” (《新概念英语 4》)

到了人生的晚年才开始说“我要对这个或那个发生兴趣”是没有用处的。这种尝试只会增加用脑之后的劳累。

[64] Despite this, many central city areas have experienced a decrease in population since the mid-1960s, as suburbs grew. **This loss** is not the result of people's returning to live on farms or in villages. (《研究生英语阅读》)

尽管如此,自 20 世纪 60 年代中期起,随着市郊的发展,许多市中心的人口逐渐减少。这种人口减少并不是人们回归到农村或山村居住的结果。

- [65] It shows that we instinctively regard the world around us to be dangerous. **This reaction** is justifiable if one considers what our history has been and the kind of society we have created. (Expanding Reading Skill)

这表明,我们本能地把我们周围的世界看成是危险的。如果人们考虑到我们有过怎样的历史,我们创造的是什么样的社会,那么这种反应是有道理的。

- [66] And in a society where these ugly barriers exist, it is better to pretend that they are not there. The result is that the writers and poets of white South Africa are incapable of producing any work which truthfully reflects their society; and so deep has this **kind of blindness** entered that no work of any real worth has been produced in South Africa for many years. (《大学英语自学教程》)

在一个存在这些丑恶隔离的社会里,最好假装它们都不存在。结果是南非的白人作家和诗人不能写出真实反映社会的任何作品;这种盲视是如此根深蒂固,致使好些年来南非没有出版过任何真正有价值的作品。

显然 this kind of blindness 是对前两句内容的总结。

- [67] Professional and managerial roles make up about twice as large a proportion of the labor force on TV as they do in the real world. To find out **this distortion** has any effect on viewers, we asked: "About what percent of Americans who have jobs are either professionals or managers—like doctors, lawyers, teachers, proprietors, or other executives?" (Expanding Reading Skill)

电视中的专业和管理工作是现实生活中的两倍。为了证实这种歪曲对电视观众的影响,我们不禁要问“究竟有百分之多少的美国人的工作要么是专业性的,要么是管理性的,如医生、律师、教师、业主或其他高级管理人员?”

显然,抽象名词 *distortion* 就是上面一句所说的情况:电视中的专业人士如医生、律师、教师和经理是现实生活中的两倍。用了 *distortion* 把上文与下文连接了起来。

### 2.6.2 跨段中衔接

抽象名词起到的连贯作用在连接段落时也非常明显,如例 [61]。再举几例:

[68] A man flown to a time zone different by 10 hours will take eight days to readjust his palm sweat. Blood pressure, which is also rhythmical, take four days to readjust.

One reason for **this discrepancy** is that different bodily events are controlled by different factors. (《大学英语自学教程》)

一个飞往有 10 小时时差的时区的人需要 8 天时间重新调整手掌出汗。血压,也有节奏,需要 4 天来重新调整。

这种不同的一个原因是不同的身体活动是由不同的因素所控制的。

[69] Armed with such a precept, a number of doctors may slip into deceptive practices that they assume will "do no harm" and may well help their patients. They may prescribe innumerable placebos, sound more encouraging than the facts warrant, and distort grave news, especially to the incurably ill and the dying.

But the illusory nature of the benefits **such deception** is meant to produce is now coming to be documented. (《大学英语 4》)

有了这样一个指导原则,一部分医生或许会渐渐习惯于采用他们认为对病人很可能有益而无害的骗人做法。他们可能会开出无数安慰剂,说一些没有事实根据的鼓气话,并歪曲严重的病情,对那些患有不治之症和濒临死亡的人则尤其如此。

然而现在开始有人提出证据,说明这种欺骗旨在给病人带来

好处的说法是虚幻的。

- [70] The differences show up early girls begin talking before boys, have larger vocabularies at an earlier age, and produce more varied and sophisticated sentences. Data show that girls score higher than boys in reading and writing.

Verbal **superiority** may continue into adulthood. (Susan V. Selgson: What Women Do Better)

这些不同早就表明:女孩子先于男孩开口说话,其词汇量在孩提时代也比男孩大,说话的句子也多有变化、且老练得多。数据证明,女孩在读和写方面的得分也比男孩高。

这种语言优势可能一直要持续到成年。

This discrepancy, such deception 和 verbal superiority 都是各自前一段所叙述的意思。

### 2.6.3 前指和后指

上面这些抽象名词具有前指归纳作用,所以 Goutsos(1997:53)索性把它们称为归纳性名词(encapsulating nominals)。抽象名词也有后指或原指作用如例[61]中的 *astonishment*。让我们再看几例能起到后指连贯作用的抽象名词。

- [71] There is another factor to be considered. There is a pathology which creates the phenomenon of the mass man—anomie or **emptiness**. Where the center of life should be filled with vivid desires, animate willing, and decisive action it is a vacuum of half-hearted wishes and inconclusive acts. (*The Anatomy of Wishing and Willing*)
- 还有一个因素要考虑进去,这就是病理学所引发的大众人现象——缺规或空虚。生活的中心应当有生动的愿望、欢乐的意愿和果断的行动,而现在成了半心半意和无结果行动的真空地。

这里抽象名词 *emptiness*(空虚)的意思是通过下面一句 the

center of life should be filled with vivid desires, animate willing, and decisive action it is a vacuum of half-hearted wishes and inconclusive acts. 很明确,即通过预示后指,起到了连贯作用。

[72] Unlike the real world, where personalities are complex, motives unclear, and outcomes ambiguous, television presents a world of **clarity** and **simplicity**. In show after show, rewards and punishment follow quickly and logically. Crises are resolved, problems are solved, and justice, or at least authority, always triumphs. The central characters in these dramas are clearly defined: dedicated or corrupted; selfless or ambitious; efficient or ineffectual. (Expanding Reading Skill)

不像真实世界里的性格是复杂的,动机是不明确的,结果是含糊的,电视世界表现的是一个事物分明,简单的世界。一个接着一个电视剧,惩罚分明,迅速而有逻辑。危机得到处理,问题得到解决,正义或至少是当局者总是胜利的。这些电视剧中的主人公都给予清楚定义:要么献身,要么腐败,要么毫无私心,要么野心勃勃,要么很有效率,要么没有。

同样,clarity 和 simplicity 的意思是不确定的。但后面的三个句子是对它们的最好说明。从这个意义上来说,clarity, simplicity 起着后指作用。

## 2.7 节奏

英语很讲究平行修辞。讲究几个语法结构相同的词、短语和小句连着使用。而抽象名词结构就是常用的平行结构。几个抽象名词连着使用,在结构上产生一种整齐感,在音律上产生一种节奏感,从而使语言更生动。如下面一例,不仅三个抽象名词连着用,而且都用后缀-ty(-ny),读着节奏感就出来了。

[73] It is a place where men should be able to live in **dignity and secu-**



**city and harmony**, where the great achievements of modern civilization and the ageless pleasure afforded by natural beauty should be available to all. (《研究生英语阅读》)

这个地方的人应该生活得尊严、安全和谐,现代文明的成就和自然美景所给予的无限乐趣应当为所有人享受。

- [74] While patients say they want peace, comfort, **the sanctity of home and freedom from pain** in their last hours, shockingly few of them actually had their wishes honored. (《现代英汉翻译操作》)

虽然病人们说他们想在弥留之际能获得清静与安逸,能置身于神圣的家庭氛围中,不受痛苦的折磨,可实际上,他们中几乎没有一个人的愿望是得到满足的。

如果用 the sanctified home and to be free from pain, 意思也一样,但平行性破坏了。改用 the sanctity of home 和 freedom from pain 和前面的 peace, comfort 内容上都是抽象性的东西,结构上都是抽象名词。

- [75] As the century developed, **the increasing importance and complexity of** the problems to be solved and **the growing interconnection** of different disciplines made it impossible, in many cases, for the individual scientists to deal with the huge mass of new data, techniques and equipment that were required for the experiments. (《研究生英语阅读》)

随着时代的发展,要解决的问题变得越来越重要,越来越复杂,各学科之间的互联性越来越多,这使得个人科学家在很多情况下不大可能处理大量的新数据,运用技术和设备,而这些东西是实验所必要的。

这里似乎用偏正结构 the increasingly important and complicated problems, 来表达更自然,但同样处于主语位置上的后半部分是 the growing interconnection of different disciplines,要形成平行结构,就得

把这个短语改成相同的抽象名词结构。

实际上,几个抽象名词结构平行使用已成为抽象名词表达的主要形式。根据我们观察,抽象名词单个出现和群体(2个以上)出现的比例是1:2。也就是说,抽象名词一般是以平行结构形式出现的,多数出现在句子里,但也可以用在句与句之间,还可以在段与段之间。

(1) 句内

抽象名词句内平行结构有两头对应平行和单边排列平行。例如:

[76] Is **the emigration** of intelligence to become an issue as absorbing as **the immigration** of strong muscle? (《现代英语表达与理解》)  
知识分子移居国外是不是和体力劳动者迁居国内同样构成问题呢?

[77] Once they had chosen, family **disposition** bound them to unremitting **effort**. (《现代英语表达与理解》)  
一旦选择定了,家庭教育便迫使他们孜孜不倦,奋发向上。  
以上两例都是主语和宾语抽象名词的对立平行。

[78] The atomic bomb has merely brought home to us, harshly, as a matter of life and death, what has long been growing: **our failure to face, our refusal to face**, as individual and as nations, the place of science in our world. (《大学英语第六册》)  
原子弹只是让我们从生死攸关的问题上深切感受到一个一直在发展的严峻事实,即作为个人和国家,我们都未能正视也拒绝正视科学在世界上的位置。

[79] It has been blamed **for the decline** of scores on scholastic achievement tests, **for the rise** in crime, **for the decline** in voter turnout, **for the growth** of premarital and extramarital sex, **for the supposed collapse** of family life and **the increase** in the divorce rate.

(Jeff Greenfield: Don't Blame TV)

人们一直在怪罪学业成绩下降,犯罪率上升,选民投票减少,婚前和婚外性行为增加,还有家庭的解体和离婚率上升。

- [80] When the Nazi Party under Adolf Hitler's leadership took over the reins of government in Germany in 1933, after a decade of agitation and violence, the world was appalled by its ruthless methods of establishing control, its **abolition** of all vestiges of democracy, its **merciless suppression** of dissenting views, its **persecution** of Jews, and its **territorial threat** against friendly neighboring nation. (Adolf Hitler's Mein Kampf)

当纳粹党在希特勒领导下自 1933 年执掌德国政府以来,经过 10 年骚动和暴力,整个世界被其建立控制后所采用的残忍手段,取消民主的所有形式,无情镇压不同意见,迫害犹太人,以及对友好邻国恐怖威胁的做法而震惊。

- [81] The success of the Carnegie empire was almost totally due to Carnegie himself—to **his drive, his imagination, his boldness and innovative daring**, and above all, **his insatiable appetite for more.** (Carnegie)

卡内奇帝国的成功完全是由于卡内奇本人的因素,即他的奋斗精神,他的想像力,他的大胆创新,最主要的是他永不满足的精神。

- [82] It is therefore necessary for an exporter to have knowledge of both the foreign culture and the negotiating process in that culture. This includes **familiarity with** the spoken language and with body language; **knowledge of** the country's social customs and formalities; **awareness of** the degree to which subtleness or, inversely, directness is current in negotiations; **understanding of** the use of time in formal talks; **knowledge of** the degree to which compromise is ac-

ceptable for reaching a final accord; **understanding of** the decision making process in the counterpart company; and **awareness of** the sanctity of oral versus written contacts. (《现代英汉翻译操作》)

因此,对出口商来说,具有外国文化知识和这类文化谈判过程的知识是必要的。这包括熟悉他们的口语和身势语,了解该国的社会习俗和礼仪,意识到谈判过程中通行的含蓄或直率可以达到何种程度,懂得如何在正式谈判过程中掌握时间,知晓为最终达成协议可以接受何种程度的妥协,还包括:完全摸清对方公司的决策程序,做到采用口头接洽还是书面联系心中有底。

- [83] This happened for many complex reasons having to do with the sexual revolution, the effects of the women's movement on the family, the dying off of the generation scarred by the Great Depression of the 1930s, a **growing disillusionment** with the ability of our institutions to deliver the goods, **the failure** of the economy to live up to people's expectations of a steady annual **increase** in income, a questioning of whether the values of a consumption economy are worth the hard work that pays for all the luxuries, **an awareness** that energy shortage and environment hazards call for a **new orientation**, and a further **evolution** of individualism into the quest for less conforming personal life-styles.

这种情况的发生,同许多复杂的因素有关。比如性革命;妇女运动对家庭产生的影响;受30年代大萧条影响的那一代人的逐渐淡出;人们对各类机构在履行自己的诺言方面的日趋失望;经济满足不了人们在收入方面每年有稳定增长的要求;对消费经济价值是否值得人们为了所有的享受而辛苦工作;能源短缺和环境问题的出现而要求有新的定向意识;个性方面的进一步演变,以追求各种不同的个人生活方式

等等。

(2) 句与句之间

- [84] **His knowledge** of the world would be built exclusively out of the images and facts he could glean from the fictional events, persons, objects and places that appear on TV. **His expectations and judgements** about the ways of the world would follow the conventions of TV programs, with their predictable plots and outcomes. **His view** of human nature would be shaped by the shallow psychology of TV characters. (Expanding Reading Skill)

他对世界的了解完全建筑在他从电视剧上的事件、人物、物体和地方所得到的形象和事实。他对世界各种事情的期望和判断是依据电视节目中的一般做法,而这些节目的情节和结果往往是可以预测的。他对人性的看法是由电视剧中人物的浅薄思想形成的。

(3) 段与段之间

- [85] One great problem is **sheer growth**—growth which crowds people into slums, thrusts suburbs out over the countryside, burdens to the breaking point all our old ways of thought and action . . .

A second is **destruction of** the physical environment, stripping people of contact with sun and fresh air, clean rivers, grass and trees—condemning them to a life among stone and concrete, neon lights and an endless flow of automobiles . . .

A third is **the increasing difficulty of** transportation—adding concealed, unpaid hours to the workweek; removing men from the social and cultural amenities that are the heart of the city; leaving behind them a band of concrete and a poisoned atmosphere . . .

(Robert F. Kennedy: The Problem of the Cities)

第一个大问题是绝对发展,这种发展使人们涌进了贫民

窟,把郊区从乡村分了出来,使我们的旧思想和行动方式濒临崩溃。

第二个问题是毁灭人们的环境,使人们得不到太阳和新鲜空气、干净的河流、草和树,使他们被迫生活在石头和水泥、霓虹灯和车流当中。

第三个问题是交通越来越困难,使看不见的、没有报酬的工作小时增加,使人们不能接触城市核心的社会和文化公益设施,留在他们身后的是一大堆水泥建筑和有毒气体。

## 2.8 委婉

由于抽象名词意义模糊笼统,因此在表达敏感的内容时可以起到一种委婉和过滤作用。正如 E. Gowers 指出的“Unfortunately the very vagueness of abstract words is one of the reasons for their popularity. To express one's thoughts accurately is hard work, and to be precise is sometimes dangerous. We are tempted to prefer the safer obscurity of the abstract”例如:

[86] To many Democratic pros, however, **the distillation** of the contest into a two-man race hold as many worries as had the earlier crowded **confusion**. (《现代英语词汇学》)

然而,对许多民主党人来说,总统候选人竞争最后集中到两人上,所带来的烦恼并不比大选初期众人竞选出现的混乱来得少。

[87] **The absence of intelligence** is an **indication** of satisfactory **developments**. (《英汉对比研究》)

没有消息即表明有令人满意的进展。

当然抽象名词的修辞功能不止这些。但有一点是肯定的,正是抽象名词的修辞功能,使得抽象名词的使用越来越广泛。张今(1996, 243)在解释抽象名词在现代英语中广泛应用的原因时指

出：“这恐怕主要是由抽象名词本身的特性决定的。它的一个主要特性是简练，这是修辞学的一条重要原则。它的另一个主要特性是具有高度的概括性，这是人类思维高度发展所需要的。正因为它具有简练和高度概括的特性，它的信息载荷量就大，具有信息论上的价值，符合信息时代的要求。总之，抽象名词应用得越来越广泛是符合语言发展的一条重要规律，即抽象规律。”

## 第三章 英汉抽象名词表达的比较

### 3.1 汉语抽象名词的特点

英语抽象名词表达非常普遍,汉语情况如何呢?汉语是否有类似英语的抽象名词表达?为了回答这个问题我们首先来考察一下汉语抽象名词。

赵元任(1968)认为汉语“抽象名词是不能用个体量或度量衡量的词”。他给出“抽象名词的例子:病,他的脾气不好是一种病;祸,我怕你要惹出一场大祸来了;累,一个人身体不好也是一种累”。他指出“总的说来,单音节的抽象名词是不多的。较长的抽象名词:成绩、道理、患难、交情、火气、人生、可能性。”

彭睿(1996,93)认为“从意义特征上看,它们所指称的概念往往或抽象,或虚幻、空灵。”他把汉语抽象名词分成七大类。

A. 意念类:意念类抽象名词所指称的概念是人对客体(包括主观世界和客观世界两方面)的评价、认识、感受和主观意愿等。例如:

思维 思想 热情 人情 意见 意图 意识  
心理 心思 心情 是非 食欲 人心 交情  
情感 企图 歉意 目的 民意 乐趣 爱情  
理想 宗旨 主张 疑心 阴谋 勇气 信念

B. 性状类:性状类抽象名词指称的概念不是人对客体的反映、评价及认识等等,而是客体(包括主观世界和客观世界)自身体现出来的性状、情态等特征或者规律性的东西。也可以说,这类抽象名词具有某种“客观”性,如:



特性	特点	特色	特征	水平	事态	实质	可能性
实际	人性	趋势	态势	局势	形势	气势	趋向
姿态	状态	形态	状况	本性	属性	党性	
性状	性能	性格	性情	性质	效果	境界	
境地	机能	规律	地步	程度	修养	形式	

- C. 知识领域类:这类抽象名词所指称的是人们在实践中总结出来的对客观和主观世界的各种认识和认知经验,即人们所获得的各种知识体系,如:

文学	数学	汉学	光学	法律	代数	美术
文化	文艺	宗教	中文	政治学	唯心论	
辩证法	物理	艺术	语法	原理	学问	知识
学术	学说	基督教	业务	信息	武术	

- D. 度量类:度量类指称的概念含有数量的概念,它们都是人类在认识世界及其实践活动中对各种事物性状特征的量的描写。如:

湿度	摄氏度	容积	气温	强度	热量	频率	透明度
浓度	年龄	能量	密度	流量	流速	面积	
路程	利润	利息	重量	物价	价格	总额	
积分	汇率	厚度	海拔	功率	血压	气压	
长度	次数	幅度	比例	比重	波长	参数	

- E. 疾病类:这类抽象名词指称的是疾病,如:

瘟疫	疾病	肝炎	病	传染病	
毛病	故障	创伤	病虫害		
弊病	弊端	害处	好处	益处	

- F. 策略、法则类:

策略	方式	手法	手段	做法	战略	战术
途径	技巧	措施				
原理	原则	标准	法则	法律	法规	

### G. 权益类:

特权 权利 权益 权 权限 权力 职权 霸权

抽象思维被认为是一种高级思维(连淑能,1993)。抽象名词的发达与否同一个国家的文明和科技发展程度有关。按照王力(2000,467)的观点,汉语抽象名词的大量出现是在“五四运动”以后。除了政治、文化等因素,在语言上,有以下几个原因:

1. “五四”白话文运动的发展,造成现代汉语双音词的大量产生,而其中有相当大的一部分就是抽象名词。如“富”、“死”古汉语中没有和英语中一样相应的名词(wealthy—wealth, die—death),“五四”中出现了抽象名词诸如“财富”、“死亡”等等。

2. 受印欧语法体系和派生造词的影响,汉语中又产生了不少带有词尾“化”,“性”,“度”等的抽象名词。如“正确”古汉语中同样没有和英语中一样相应的名词(exact-exactness),受英语形容词后加后缀-ness的影响,出现了正确性。

3. 有些抽象名词在古汉语中是没有的,而是直接从西方传过来的。如“民主”、“逻辑”、“自由”等。

尽管汉语抽象名词如同英语抽象名词一样都是表达一种抽象的概念,但所表达的抽象程度不同。如果说英语抽象名词从意义和形式上都可以感觉到其抽象性、虚化性,那么汉语抽象名词的具体意义就较多了些。这可以从以下两方面来证明。

(1) 英语抽象名词绝大多数是从动词和形容词派生来的,只有很少一部分是从动词、形容词直接转化来的。而在动词或形容词后面加上-ment, -tion, -ence, -ity, -ship, -ism, -ure, -ness 这些名词后缀,我们就可以明显感觉到其抽象性。

与英语不同的是,从动词和形容词派生来的汉语抽象名词却很少,比如:

性:正确性、必要性、重要性、可读性、片面性、弹性、酸性  
化:机械化、现代化、民主化、典型化、尖锐化、美化、腐化

度:高度、强度、密度、厚度、牢度、幅度

处:好处、益处、坏处、害处

量:热量、重量、轻量、变量

法:分析法、比较法、归纳法、演绎法

观:乐观、悲观

主义:爱国主义,社会主义,集体主义

显然,我们从这些词尾中多少还看得出一些西方语言特别是英语词缀的痕迹,如:

性:-ity, -cy, -ce, -ness 如 diversity(多样性), relevance(关联性), accuracy(准确性)

度:-th 如 length(长度), width(宽度), depth(深度)

化:-tion, -ization 如 privatization(私有化), modernization(现代化), industrialization(工业化)

观:-ism 如 pessimism(悲观), optimism(乐观)

主义:-ism 如 individualism(个人主义), socialism(社会主义)

但绝大多数的汉语抽象名词则是从动词和形容词直接转化而来的。它们在词形上没有形态变化,只是词类变化了。请看从动词转化来的:

知道,研究,批评,进攻,申请,武装,指示,主张,企图  
从形容词转化来的:

耐心,勇敢,光荣,精神,安全,困难,骄傲,聪明,细心

没有上下文,很难说这些词是名词。因此可以这样说,汉语当中的抽象名词实际上是一种兼类词,即动词兼名词,或形容词兼名词。让我们来比较一下:

[1] 我们一定能够实现这一理想。

[2] 这一切取决于目标的实现。

[3] 我们坚决支持第三世界国家的正义斗争。

[4] 成功离不开人民的支持。

- [5] 她非常细心。  
 [6] 我不能不佩服她的细心。  
 [7] 我们为他感到骄傲。  
 [8] 他是我们的骄傲。

[2]、[4]、[6]、[8]的抽象名词都是兼类词,由动词或形容词兼名词。

这些词尽管用作名词,但由于缺少像英语那样的词缀虚化形式,我们多少感觉到它们的具体意义。正如王力(1984)指出的:“英文里从形容词形成的抽象名词,如 kindness, wisdom, humility, youth, 从动词形成的抽象名词,如 invitation, movement, choice, assistance, arrival, discovery 等,中国字典里可以说是没有一个词和他们相当的。在中国词的形式上,辨别不出抽象名词的特征;它们是和形容词或动词完全同形的。我们在上文声明过,我们不赞成从职务上分别词类,因此我们就不能从‘我喜欢他的聪明’一类的句子里,去证明‘聪明’是一个抽象名词,也不能从‘他费了长时间的选择’一类句子里,去证明‘选择’是一个抽象名词。我们如果从概念上去辨别,中国语里的‘聪明’断然是一个形容词,因为它表示一种德性;‘选择’断然是一个动词,因为它表示一种行为。”

王力这样认为不是没有道理,不说英语派生名词,就英语中的转化名词,只要出现在主语或宾语或介词宾语位置上,一般说来,都是抽象名词,而且能感觉得到。

- [9] **The desire** that men feel to increase their income is quite as much a **desire** for success as for the extra comforts that a higher income can obtain. (《大学英语第四册》)

人们渴望增加收入既是为了获得高收入带来的更多的舒适,也是为了渴望获得成功。

- [10] I will not have it said that I could never teach my daughter **proper respect** for her elders. (《英汉翻译基础》)

我可不愿意让人家指着脊梁说我从来不教自己的女儿要尊敬长辈。

而汉语中的兼类名词情况就比较复杂了。许多处于主语或宾语位置上的动词或形容词是不能看做名词或抽象名词的。如：

[11] 学习并不是简单的事情。

[12] 这个孩子非常喜欢舞蹈。

[13] 解放军还没有停止射击。

王力(2000, 459)不认为这些句子中的“学习”、“舞蹈”和“射击”是抽象名词,他认为应当把它们看做是动词,相当于英语中的动名词。形容词同样如此:

[14] 他从小就喜欢冷静,不喜欢热闹。

句中的“冷静”、“热闹”也不是抽象名词,而是形容词,相当于英语中的分词结构。

换句话说,英语句子中处于主语或谓语上的抽象名词,在相应位置上的汉语句子里中不一定是抽象名词。如:

[15a] **Instability and turbulence** characterized the area.

[15b] 不稳定和动荡是这个地区的特点。

在[15a]里,instability, turbulence 是抽象名词表达,但[15b]中相应位置上的“不稳定”和“动荡”只能算是形容词。也就是说,它们等于英语中的分词结构:

[15c] **Being unstable and turbulent** characterized the area.

[16a] **The knowledge of their** business demonstrates that we have no competitive advantage.

[16b] 了解他们的经营就会明白,我们并无竞争的优势。

[17a] **Dissatisfaction** with our way of life is the first step toward changing it.

[17b] 不满意我们的生活方式只是改变这种情况的第一步。

显然我们很难说[16b]的“了解”和[17b]的“不满意”是抽象

名词。

(2) 当然,英语中不是没有很抽象的名词,如:

事态 姿态 状态 形态

特性 特点 特色 特征

频率 汇率 功率 速率

趋势 态势 局势 形势

性状 性能 性格 性质

在汉语中,有人把这些名词称为范畴词,语法书一般把它们归入抽象名词中。如彭睿(1996,93)在其列出的七大类抽象名词中,第二类性状性抽象名词主要就是这些范畴词,它们确实很抽象,但是根据我们的观察,它们更像英语中的名词词缀,而非抽象词本身。因为这些词本身的意义是较笼统、含糊的,它们只是跟在动词、名词或形容词后面,才构成有一定意义的名词结构或对应的英语抽象名词,如:

局势:紧张局势(tension)

现象:失业现象(unemployment),反常现象(abnormality)

情绪:自满情绪(complacency),悲观情绪(pessimism)

状态:敌对状态(hostility),麻木状态(stupefaction)

工作:说服工作(persuasion),教育工作

作用:中和作用(neutralization),模范作用

行为:作弊行为(dishonesty),偷窃行为(theft)

方式:交配方式,传送方式(transmission)

方法:测量方法(measurement),教学方法

办法:解决办法(solution)

情况:紧急情况(emergency),航行情况(navigation)

事件:突然事件(emergency),暴力事件(violence)

态度:傲慢态度,冷漠态度(indifference)

问题:腐败问题(corruption),环境问题(environment)

事业:教育事业(education),科技事业(science and technology)

关系:合作关系(partnership),相互关系(mutuality)

马祖毅(1980,52)指出:“在汉语中常常见到这样一些带抽象性的名词,如‘落后状态’、‘说服教育工作’、‘生产事业’、‘人民民主制度’,其中的‘状态’、‘工作’、‘事业’、‘制度’等都是‘范畴词’,表示一种范畴。英语有词形变化,汉语没有。汉语里的‘范畴词’相当于英语里构成名词,特别是抽象名词的后缀”。

我们更愿意把范畴词看做是抽象名词的后缀,原因是:其一,它们较为固定,如同英语后缀-ment, -tion, -ency, 可以加在动词、形容词、名词后构成抽象名词;其二,它们有时可以和汉语中“性”“度”“化”“法”这些外来抽象词后缀互换使用。如:

[18] 许多大学要求对教师的英语流利程度/性进行测试并提供证明。

Many colleges were required to test and certify their faculties' **fluency** of English.

显然,这里的“流利程度”可以换成“流利性”,它们是一个意思。

另外,由范畴词构成的抽象名词和一般的抽象名词又有一定的区别,它们一般比较具体。如:

[19a] 他表现出了驾驭和控制紧急事件的高超能力。

[20a] 面临电力日益短缺的情况,他只得下令全国的企业实行每周3日工作制。

[21a] 他担心城市里会发生新的暴力活动。

[22a] 他的这次访问有助于缓和国际紧张局势。

[23a] 他主张成立一个防务团来负责平时的反颠覆工作。

正如彭启良(1980;73)指出的:“我们在处理英语抽象名词的时候,也往往采取具体化的办法——根据汉语的习惯,增添相应的词,如添‘情绪、局势、现象’等范畴词。”

也就是说,由范畴词构成的抽象名词具体意义较大,而它们对应的英语抽象名词却完全是抽象概念。

[19b] He demonstrated the ultimate capacity to dominate and control supreme **emergency**. (《英文翻译技巧》)

[20b] Faced with growing power **shortage**, he had to order his nation's industry placed on a three-day workweek. (《英译汉理论与实例》)

[21b] He worried about new **violence** in the city. (《英译汉理论与实例》)

[22b] His visit contributed to a lessening of international **tension**. (《英译汉理论与实例》)

[23b] He called for creation of a defense corps to take charge of **anti-subversion** in peacetime. (《英译汉理论与实例》)

我们可以从上述情况中看到汉语抽象名词的具体性。我们在第一章中确定了英语抽象名词表达的定义:即“是指原来可用动词或形容词短语或句子表达的概念,现在改用抽象名词来表达。它有两个显著的特征:(1)抽象名词一般构成 NP 结构,即名词短语结构,典型的结构是 N + of + N;(2)抽象名词一般是从动词或形容词派生或转化来的”。根据这个定义和上面对汉语抽象名词的分析,我们可以发现真正的汉语抽象名词表达不很多。下面让我们来分析一个语篇。

[24] 对此我们必须有清醒的认识。现在的问题是,西方这种新的“遏制”战略在亚太的实现将以何为突破口呢?显然是中国。他们在中国非要实现两个目的不可:(1)改变中国社会主义政权以实现其政治利益。即使我国“放弃社会主义道路,最终纳入国际垄断资本的统治,纳入资本主义道路”。(2)分裂乃至肢解中国以削弱我国广阔的地缘政治优势,使中国在分裂和内战中中断由中共开创的中国现代化的百年进程。



(《中国大趋势》)

在这一小段中,可以作为抽象名词表达的只有四个:“认识”=清楚地认识到;“实现”=实现这种战略;“分裂”=分裂中国;统治=垄断资本统治(我们)。而“问题”、“战略”、“目的”、“政权”、“利益”、“优势”、“内战”只能算一般的抽象名词。

### 3.2 英汉抽象名词的语篇对比

为了比较英汉抽象名词表达的频率,我们选择了相同语体,类似内容的两组文章进行对比。

第一组我们选取语体比较高的科技语体英汉两篇文章的节录。

英语我们选择了 Research Reports for Business and Technical Writing(科研报告的写作)中关于如何写科研学术报告的一节。

[25] The standard research report, regardless of the field or the intended reader, contains four major sections. These sections may be broken down into a variety of subsections, and they may be arranged in a variety of ways, but they regularly make up the core of the report.

Problem Section. The first required section of a research report is the **statement** of the problem with which the research project is concerned. This section requires a precise **statement** of the underlying question which the researcher has set out to answer. In this same section there should be an **explanation** of the **significance**—social, economic, medical, psychological, educational, etc. —of the question; in other words, why the investigation was worth conducting. Thus, if we set out, for example, to answer the question “What is the **effect** of regular **consumption** of fast foods on the health of the American teenager?” we must explain that the question

is thought to have significant **relevance** to the health of this segment of the population and might lead to some sort of **regulations** on such foods.

A frequent subsection of this problem section is a **review** of past research on the topic being investigated. This would consist of **summaries** of the **contributions** of previous researchers to the question under consideration with some **assessment** of the **value** of these **contributions**. This subsection has rhetorical **usefulness** in that it enhances the **credibility** of the researcher by indicating that the data presented is based on a thorough **knowledge** of what has been done in the field and, possibly, grows out of some investigative tradition.

Wayne Losano    Research Reports For Business and Technical Writing

(《大学英语第六册》)

译文:

不论什么学科或什么样的阅读对象,标准的科研报告包含四大部分。这些部分又可分成许许多多的小部分,并且可以利用多种方式组成文章。但无论怎样,它们通常是报告的主体。

问题部分。科研报告中这一首要的部分,是用来阐述研究项目的课题的。该部分要求对研究人员打算解决的最根本的问题做出精确的描述。同时,还需要说明研究该问题有何——社会的、经济的、医疗的、心理的、教育等方面的——意义。换言之,要解释为什么应该进行该项研究。例如,如果我们要解决“常用快餐会对美国青少年的健康产生什么影响”这个问题,我们就必须说清楚:据认为这一问题与这部分人的健康有重大关系,对这个问题的研究,有可能导致制定出有关

该类食品的某些规定。

这一部分中,常有一节叙述有关课题过去的研究情况。其内容常包括:对以往从事这一课题的研究人员所作出的贡献的概述,以及对这些贡献的适当评价。这一节文字还可以起到修辞效果。它表明,报告所提供的资料,是在对课题有关领域过去的情况作过深透了解的基础上提出来的,因而可见是经过一定的调查研究的,这样便提高了对研究人员的可信度。

(《大学英语第六册》教师用书)

中文我们选择了《学术论文》,同样关于如何写科研学术报告的一节:

[26] 一般性学术论文的写作过程和其他文章一样,因人而异、因文而异;没有什么固定的程序;规范性学术论文,在课题研究和写作过程中,则必须遵循一定的原则和程序、按部就班地进行,才能妥善处理各个环节的具体问题,按照论文的要求,顺利完成论文的撰写。现就学术论文写作的基本途径/主要环节和步骤,简要介绍如下:

#### 一、选题

选题是学术论文写作的开始,实际上就是选择和确定科研课题、科研方向的过程,是极为重要的一步。一般被选作论文题目的,或者是在学习中遇到的问题,产生了深入探讨的愿望;或者是经过调查研究,有所发现,引起了浓厚的兴趣;或者是当前亟需解决的课题,意识到研讨的责任感。这类论题经过深入研究,最终得到圆满解决后,必然对学业发展和专业修养,带来极大的积极影响。在具体确定选题的过程中,要注意以下几点:

第一,选题要在调查研究的基础上进行。

选题前,要对本学科的发展现状做必要的调查研究,摸清

情况,理出问题。同时,通过初步阅读有关资料,对前人的研究情况,有一个概括认识。然后再确定自己的研究方向和论文题目。

(选自徐振宗等《汉语写作学》)

英语原文中 17 个抽象名词表达,汉语译文按照原文结构翻译,还是保留了 8 个抽象名词表达。而汉语材料中有 9 个抽象名词表达法。

	英语文章		汉语文章
	原文	译文	
抽象名词表达	17	8	9

第二组我们选择了说明文语体的两篇关于电视副作用的英汉文章。英语我们选择了 Expanding Reading Skills 中的一篇 The Scary World of TV's Heavy Viewer(沉溺于电视的人眼中的吓人世界)的最后三段:

[27] Victims, like criminals, must learn their proper roles, and televised violence may perform the teaching function all too well. Instead of worrying only about whether television violence causes individual **displays of aggression** in the real world, we should also be concerned about the way such symbolic violence influences our assumptions about social reality. **Acceptance** of violence and **passivity** in the face of **injustice** may be **consequences** of far greater social **concern** than occasional **displays** of individual **aggression**.

Throughout history, once a ruling class has established its rule, the primary function of its cultural media has been the **legitimization** and **maintenance** of its authority. Folk tales and other traditional dramatic stories have always reinforced established au-

thority, teaching that when society's rules are broken, **retribution** is visited upon the violators. **The importance** of the existing social order is always explicit in such stories.

We have found that violence on prime-time network TV cultivates exaggerated assumptions about the **threat** of danger in the real world. **Fear** is a universal emotion, and easy to exploit. The exaggerated sense of risk and insecurity may lead to increasing **demands** for **protection**, and to increasing **pressure** for the **use** of force by established authority. Instead of threatening the social order, television may have become our chief instrument of social **control**.

(George Gerbner: The Scary World of TV's Heavy Viewer)

译文:

电视受害者如同罪犯必须学会了解这些角色,而电视上的暴力具有说教的功能。不必只去担心电视上的暴力是否会造成人们在现实世界中使用暴力,我们同时也应当关心电视上的这种暴力如何影响我们对社会现实的看法。在社会不公正面前,接受暴力,委曲求全或许比起个人有时的施暴行为具有更大的社会意义方面的后果。

从整个历史来看,一旦统治阶级确立自己的地位,他们的文化媒体的主要功能就是使他们的政权合法化,并把这种权威继续下去。民间故事和其他传统戏剧故事总是帮助加强这种政权,其宣传的观点是:一旦社会统治被破坏,破坏者就会得到应有的惩罚。在这些故事里处处表现出社会统治阶级的重要性。

我们发现,电视黄金时间的暴力片子夸大了现实生活中的危险,并向人们灌输这种夸大的看法。害怕是人人都有的一种心理,而且很容易被利用。夸大不安全感会使社会越来越要求得到保护,越来越要求统治政权使用武力。电视不会

危及社会秩序,或许可能成为社会统治的主要工具。

中文我们选择了《20 世纪谁改变了我们的生存》,其中一篇“电视:‘巫师’的魔力”的最后三段:

[28] 电视作为大众传媒,利用它庞大的电视网络,为大众不断制造出形象的乌托邦,使其成为现代意义上的原始图腾,让大众仿效和膜拜。由于电视形象的无所不在、无所不至,使大众不得不对这些形象进行即时消费,从而避免了生活中暂时的空虚,并最终沉沦于这些形象的碎片中。MTV 的流行就在于它把音乐演绎成分裂的形象,由此煽起观众对形象的愉悦;电视广告则是将商品的买卖转化成形象的买卖;电视模特儿总是千娇百媚,她们出售的不是商品,而是自己的形象。这些恰恰也正是现代大众所追求的。至于电视剧包装出来的偶像,更是具有图腾的意义。如英雄般的力量、纯情的气质、魔鬼的身材、幽默的话语、勾人的眼神、漂亮的脸蛋、动人的爱情……正如列依说的:“我比上帝还有名。”在精英文化逐渐边缘化的过程中,以电视为代表的大众文化构筑了新的文化大系。

电视还引导社会时尚,发布流行情报,预测潮流变化。因此电视是当之无愧的 POP 文化、时尚文化、快餐文化。

电视在为人类文明做出贡献的同时,也给人类文明带来了一些负面影响:

1. 由于电视是以光和影为刺激的视觉艺术,它利用摄像机对事物进行复原,因此往往消解了现实的深度而只留于现象的表层。这种方式导致了电视虫们思维能力的退化,出现了成人心理儿童化、白痴化的现象。

2. 电视以其密集的信息量和观看的愉悦舒适性占据了人们大部分的业余时间,这就使人类文字阅读的时间日益减少,从而造成语言文字能力的下降。

3. 电视为了满足人们的唯美理想,展现的往往是豪华的生活,塑造的也是完美的人格;而现实生活是既不理想也不完美,这就容易使人们在借助电视宣泄情感的同时走进梦幻的误区。长期下去,人们会越来越依赖电视,沉迷于电视,而人与人的现实沟通和理解却越来越难。

(李安东:《20世纪谁改变了我们的生存》P.213—214)

英语材料中的抽象名词表达有 20 个,在译文中只保留了 3 个,其余都用动词或其他结构来表达。而汉语材料中的抽象名词表达有 13 个。

	英语文章		汉语文章
	原文	译文	
抽象名词表达	20	3	13

通过对比分析我们似乎可以得出以下两点看法:

- 1) 英汉语言里都有抽象名词的表达,但其使用频率前者高于后者。即使在科技和说明这两种正式程度较高、使用抽象名词较多的语体里,英语抽象名词的频率也远远高于汉语。
- 2) 汉语抽象名词表达抽象性不强。我们可以把汉语的抽象名词表达结构归纳如下:

1. 进行研究/调查/考察/复原/消费;做出贡献/判断/描述:得到惩罚/保护
2. 经过研究/分析;通过阅读/学习
3. 解决的课题,发展的现象,阅读的时间
4. 暂时的空虚,能力的退化,商品的买卖

第一类相当于英语的 make a study/contribution/attempt/comment,  
gain support/protection

第二类相当于英语的 through the analysis/study/the reading

第三类相当于英语的 development phenomenon, safety standard  
第四类相当于英语的 the decrease of the ability, the purchase of goods

但由于汉语这些名词都是从名词或形容词直接转类过来的, 所以其抽象性就打折扣。如第二类可以分析为 through/analyzing/studying reading, 第三类可以分析为 the subject to the dealt with, time for reading.

### 3.3 英语抽象名词的汉语对应表达

那么英语中的抽象名词表达, 汉语的对应表达是什么呢?

#### 3.3.1 动词形容词

英语抽象名词最常见的是用汉语动词或形容词来表达的。

##### (1) 动词结构

[29] Aggression took many forms: the unilateral **denunciation** of treaties and international commitments, **interference** in the internal affairs of other states, **the use** of threats against weaker neighbors, **the imposition** of unequal relationships, outright armed **attack** against the territories of other states and their **dismemberment**, **the subjugation** of colonial peoples and **the denial** of the right of self-determination and fundamental human rights. (《英译汉理论与实践》)  
侵略有许多形式: 单方面废除条约与国际义务, 干涉别国内政, 对较弱邻国实施威胁, 强迫实行不平等关系, 赤裸裸武装进攻别国领土和肢解别国, 征服殖民地民族, 否认自决权和基本权。

[30] Laser is one of the most sensational developments in recent years, because of its **applicability** to many fields of science and its **adaptability** to practical uses. (《英译汉理论与实践》)

激光可以应用于许多科学领域, 又适合于各种实际用途, 因



此成了近年来轰动一时的科学成就之一。

- [31] There are hints already: **grumblings about** how much money he makes, **criticisms of** his decision not to play in his second Olympics, **remarks about** appearances in show business. (《21 世纪大学英语 1》)

已经有一些迹象: 叽叽咕咕说他赚了多少钱, 批评他决心不再参加奥运会, 并议论他频繁涉足影视界。

- [32] His **support** for Portugal's **occupation** of Goa has turned the Asian peoples against his government all the more. (《英汉语比较与翻译》)

他支持葡萄牙占据果阿, 使得亚洲人民更加反对他的政府。

## (2) 形容词结构

- [33] The method of scientific investigation is nothing but the **expression of** the necessary mode of working of the human mind. (《全国研究生入学考试阅读理解》)

科学研究的方法不过是一种人类思维活动的必要表达方式。

- [34] The cultivation of a hobby and new forms of interest is therefore a policy **of first importance** to a public man. (《新概念英语 4》)

因此, 对于一个政府人员来说, 培养业余爱好和新的兴趣是头等重要的明智之举。

- [35] Today, for example, people are demanding the right to medical assistance in ending their lives when continued existence offers little possibility **of happiness**. (《研究生英语阅读》)

例如, 今天当人们发现继续生活下去不会有幸福的可能时, 他们强烈要求有权借助医学来结束自己的生命。

## 3.3.2 以实代虚

英语抽象名词概念在汉语中往往比较具体化。

- [36] I marveled at the relentless **determination of the rain**. (《英汉对

比研究》)

雨无情地下个不停,我感到惊异。

- [37] So I bought at my own expense the thinnest uniforms I could find, also a heavy one with a warm top coat, because I knew I would **encounter extremes of weather**. (《英译汉理论与实例》)

所以我就自己出资买了一套我能物色到的最薄的军服,还买了一套厚军服,带有一件暖和的大衣,因为我知道我会碰到最冷和最热的天气。

- [38] Fifty-four department stores in New York featured Rockefeller headquarters where **literature was passed out** to lady shoppers. (《英译汉理论与实例》)

纽约有 54 家百货公司起到了洛克菲勒总部的作用,因为它们向妇女顾客散发宣传品。

- [39] And I knew that many families today were conscious of **absences**. (《英译汉理论与实例》)

我明白,许多家庭今天都已意识到他们家庭中人员少了些。

- [40] The Age of Software will offer more games, home banking, electronic shopping, video on demand, and a host of other services that unplug us from **physical contact**. (《英译汉理论与实例》)

软件时代将向我们提供更多的游戏,更多的家庭银行服务,更多的电子购物项目,更多的任选收视节目,以及一大批其他的服务种类,使我们不必事事躬亲。

- [41] I knew even then she was helping people out. She had a face that invited **confidence** and a heart that never betrayed it. (《英汉翻译理论与技巧》)

即便在那个时候,我就懂得她是在热心救助人家,她的脸让人看了就会把她当作自己人,为人也是耿耿此心。

- [42] Polly missed the **sociability** of a store position. She missed the

choir, and the company of her sisters. (《英汉翻译理论与技巧》)

波利怀念做店员可与众生广泛接触的生活,怀念唱诗班,怀念姐妹们的陪伴。

- [43] He waited for them to emerge like a waiter in an American-plan hotel waiting for the dining-room doors to open, like a lover, like a drought-ruined farmer waiting for rain but without the sense of the **universality of waiting**, that waiting was the human condition. (《英汉翻译理论与技巧》)

他等待着他们的出现,就像美式旅馆里的服务员等待餐厅开门,像情人等待幽会,像被干旱弄得倾家荡产的庄稼人等待降雨却又没有意识到常人都在急巴巴地等待那样,这种等待正是人之常情。

### 3.3.3 四字词语

汉语四字成语的形象化表达往往能传递英语抽象名词概念。

- [44] She wondered whether her **outspokenness** might be a liability to Franklin. (《英汉对比研究》)

他怀疑自己那么心直口快,是否会成为富兰克林的包袱。

- [45] When young he quitted his home and traveled to the metropolis, which he reached in a state of almost **utter destitution**. (《英汉对比研究》)

年轻时代,他离乡背井,徒步来到首都,几乎身无分文。

- [46] He was open now to charges of **willful blindness**. (《英汉对比研究》)

这时人们指责他装聋作哑。

- [47] He had surfaced with less **visibility** in the policy decisions. (《英汉对比研究》)

在决策过程中,他已经不那么抛头露面了。

- [48] Each device had theatrical element, the press conferences were ritual and theatre, the referenda dramas of **suspense**. (《英文汉译技巧》)

每一种花样都有其戏剧性成分,记者招待会举行仪式以及舞台表演,而公民投票则是大卖关子的戏剧。

- [49] He sought the **distraction of distance**. (《英汉翻译技巧》)

他想远走高飞,免得心烦。

连叔能(1992,144)给出了更多这样的例子:

disintegration 土崩瓦解

ardent loyalty 赤胆忠心

far-sightedness 远见卓识

perfect harmony 水乳交融

impudence 厚颜无耻

careful consideration 深思熟虑

total exhaustion 筋疲力尽

with great eagerness 如饥似渴

offend public decency 伤风败俗

make a little contribution 添砖加瓦

on the verge of destruction 危在旦夕

await with great anxiety 望穿秋水

lack of perseverance 三天打鱼,两天晒网

### 3.3.4 用范畴词

用范畴词或汉语特殊的抽象名词后缀。

- [50] I commit myself to make up for past mistake to fight corruption and **injustices** and to form a national government to carry out free elections. (《英译汉理论与实例》)

我决心弥补我过去的错误,同贪污腐化和各种不公正现象作斗争,并且成立一个全国性的管理机构来执行自由选举。

- [51] He stressed the growing concern of the United States at the increasing **political instability** in the Middle East region. (《英译汉理论与实例》)

他强调,美国越来越关注中东地区日趋不稳定的政治局面。

- [52] Meanwhile individual schools are moving on their own to redress the **imbalance** between teaching and research. (《英汉翻译基础》)

与此同时,各学校正采取步骤纠正教学与科研不平衡的状况。

- [53] Students need to be teased out of their **indifference** to learning.

学生必须加以嘲弄才能使他们脱离对学习无动于衷的状况。

- [54] To be sure, under the placid surface of life there always was dissatisfied **restlessness** ever since the end of the Allied occupation regime.

的确,自从盟国占领制度结束以来,在表面平静的生活下面始终存在着不满和不安的情绪。

### 3.4 英汉抽象名词表达多寡的原因

抽象名词结构表达在英语中比较突出,除了上面说的因素外,还有下列一些原因。

3.4.1 从词的结构来看,英语的词化程度要比汉语高得多。这就为抽象名词结构的表达创造了有利条件。所谓词化是指“对于一个同样在语义上较为复杂的概念,如果我们可以用一个词来表达,那么这种表达法称为综合型表达法。综合型表达法是一种词化了的表达法”。(许余龙, 1992, 140)简单说来,对于一个较为复杂的概念,或一个要用一个短语或句子来表达的意义,能够在词库里找到一个现成的词来表达,这就是词化。如许余龙(1992, 141)就举了动词 stink 的例子。stink 的意思是“give a strong bad smell”(发出强烈的臭味),这个较复杂的语义能够用一个词来表示在汉语中就

做不到。而英语名词的词化程度更高。如：

[55] Unlike newspapers and magazines, television does not require **literacy**. Unlike the movies, it runs continuously, and once purchased, costs almost nothing. Unlike radio, it can show as well as tell. Unlike the theatre or movies, it does not require leaving your home. With virtually unlimited **access**, television both precedes literacy and, increasingly, preempts it. (George Gerbner: The Scary World of TV's Heavy Viewer)

短短一个小段中,运用了2个抽象名词的表达:

literacy = being able to read and write;

access = having opportunity to use sth.

显然,汉语中找不到单个词能表达这么复杂的意义。如 literacy 的汉语要用“阅读和写作能力”一个短语来表达。

[56] 电视以其密集的信息量和观看的愉悦舒适性,占据了人们大部分的业余时间,这就使人类文字阅读的时间日益减少,从而造成了语言文字能力的下降。(李安东:《20世纪谁改变了我们的生存》P.213—214)

词化程度的高低同语言中派生词多少有关。从前面的论述中我们可以知道,英语中构成派生抽象名词的后缀是相当丰富的。几乎任何一个动词或形容词,加上恰当的词缀就可以变成抽象名词,其表达的意义是相当丰富的。如:

staff: 全体员工 → understaffed: 人员配备不够的 →

understaffing: 人员配备不足

lingual: 语言的 → multilingual: 用多种语言表达的 →

multilingualism: 多种语言的使用

understaffing, multilingual 这些词在汉语中是没有对等的单个词语的。

王珏(2001)认为“一向被视为资格老、能产性强的词缀如

阿一、老一、小一、初一、第一、使一、所一、而一、认一、巴一、一子、一儿、一头、一个、一的、一者、一员、一生、一家、一士、一工、一手、一师、一汉、一夫、一丁、一郎、一众、一属、一鬼、一棍、一迷、一肥、一巴、一级、一流等”几乎不能参与抽象名词的构成。只有一些准词缀,即近现代以来伴随着外来词的借入以印欧语和日语中借用来的词缀,如“反一(counter, anti)、准一(quasi, para)、非一(un, non)、超一(ultra, super, extra)、一主义(ism)、一性(ty, ce, ness)、一化(ize, ify)、一度(th)、一品(things, food, work, production)、一派(school, ist, group)、一式(type, model, style, pattern)、一论、一学、一量、一态、一气、一数、一质、一速、一法等才能构成抽象名词”,派生的抽象名词少,词化程度就不高了。

[57] I receive much mail from correspondents who consider anything but **blunt literalness** to be dishonesty. (《21 世纪大学英语》第四册)  
我收到许多记者的来信,他们认为只有直言不讳才是诚实。

literal 是作“照字面意思”解,但是加上后缀-ness,作为派生抽象名词是什么意思呢?在同一段的后几句有这样一句话:

[58] Those who believe in **blunt, literal truth** also claim special license to be rude by giving honest answers to such careless questions as “Do I look right?” (《21 世纪大学英语》第四册)

那些提倡实话实说的人在回答“我看上去好吗?”之类漫不经心的问题时会说实话,这也就等于给粗鲁以特别许可。

显然,literalness 就是指 literal truth,即“说话直来直去”这个较为丰富的意思。可见英语抽象名词词化程度是很高的。虽然它的本身抽象、虚化,但在具体的上下文中,根据其派生动词或形容词的习惯搭配,单个抽象名词往往能表达更具体、更丰富的意思。而汉语抽象名词本身比较实,因此词义比较狭,也就很难表达更丰富的意思。更多的只能采取具体表达法。

[59] Back in the 1960s, scholars advised the American public that au-

tation was making work unnecessary, so the big problem of the future would be how to cope with an **overabundance** of the free time. (《研究生英语阅读》)

早在 20 世纪 60 年代,专家就警告美国公众,说自动化使得工作变得没有必要,这样,未来最大的问题就是如何处理大量过剩的休闲时间。

abundance 是“丰富”的意思,加上前缀 over- 就是“丰富得过剩”。显然,汉语中是没有单个表示 overabundance 这个词语的。

[60] The future, then, to which the epoch of modern economic growth is leading is one of never ending economic growth, a world in which ever growing **abundance** is matched by ever rising **aspiration**. (《研究生英语阅读》)

现代经济发展时代所要引向的未来是一个经济发展永不停止的时代,是一个物质不断丰富,人的愿望永不满足的世界。

这里的派生词 abundance 和 aspiration, 相应的形容词和动词是 abundant 和 aspire。和这两个词经常搭配的:前者是“物质”,后者是“人”。因此在这个上下文中读者不难理解这两个词表达的就是“物质丰富”,“人的愿望满足”的意思。而汉语中没有相应的抽象名词来表达,只能用较多的词语,只能具体一点。

[61] There is more **agreement** on the kinds of behavior referred to by the term than there is on how to interpret or classify them. (《硕士研究生考试试题 1991 年》)

对这个词所指的那些行为,人们的意见比较一致,而对这些行为如何解释和分类,人们的看法就不一致了。

这里的 agreement 是从动词 agree 派生来的,而 agree 的习惯主语是人,因此在用 agreement 抽象名词时,无须用 people's,人们还是能理解。而汉语中就没有包含“人们意见一致”这层意思的单个抽象名词了。



3.4.2 从句子结构来看,英语句子结构适合于抽象名词的使用。其一,英语几乎每个动词结构,不仅有它相应的派生名词,还有它固定的搭配:

to contribute—to make a great/tremendous contribution to

to understand—to have a better/full understand of

to appreciate—to have a full appreciation of

to emphasize—to place emphasis on

to resemble—to bear resemblance on

to consider—to give much consideration to

to object—to have/there is a strong objection to

to understand—to deepen one's understanding of

to assure—to give one's assurance that

to study—(to have) a study of

to examine—(to have) an examination/ investigation

to review—(to have) a review of

to realize—there is an increasing/growing realization of

to analyze—(to have) a careful analysis of

to criticize—the criticism of

to support—a support of

综上所述,英语变动词结构表达为名词结构表达几乎没有有什么困难。

[62a] He failed in this exam, so he felt disheartened.

[62b] His failure in the exam made him disheartened.

他这次考试不及格,因而很沮丧。

[63a] You can rectify the fault if you insert a wedge.

[63b] Rectification of this fault is achieved by insertion of a wedge.

嵌入一个楔子就可纠正误差。

反观汉语,尽管大多数汉语动词结构也有它们相应的名词结

构,如“……的批评/支持/贡献/学习/了解”,但因句法结构限制较大,实际使用很少。如:

- [64] I can **offer no ready acceptance** to the theory that New York's staggering size creates meanness in the same proportion. (《研究生基础英语 II》)

说纽约城市之大,结果气量之小,对这种说法我很难轻易接受。

英语表达 I cannot readily accept, 可以很容易用抽象名词表达: offer no ready acceptance, 但汉语没有类似的抽象名词表达, 我们不能说: “对这种说法的接受, 我不能轻易给予。”

- [65] Of course, New York and I were never married; we **committed a dalliance** for ten years, never anything more serious. (《研究生基础英语》)

当然, 纽约和我从来没有结过婚, 10 年来我们只是互相调情, 从没当真过。

显然, committed a dalliance, 汉语是无法用抽象名词结构表达的。

- [66] His **richness** of sympathy made him a symbol to an age. (《高级翻译教程》)

他富有同情心, 这使他成为一个时代的象征。

这个意思汉语也是无法用名词结构表达的。

其二, 英语介词丰富, 为多个抽象名词结构的连着使用创造了条件。而汉语介词比较少, 且较为单一, 要使用抽象名词结构, 受句法限制就多一些。如:

- [67] He was not content to appeal for **the end of poverty and ignorance and disease**; he called for **the destruction of the system** which was responsible for these evils. (《英汉翻译高分指导》)

他并不满足于呼吁消除贫苦、愚昧和疾病, 他号召摧毁那个

造成这一切罪恶的制度。

从这句话中,我们可以看出两种语言的不同点。几个动作,英语借助 of 用抽象名词表达非常自然,而汉语无法做到,不能说“不满足于呼吁贫苦、愚昧和疾病的结束”,“他号召那个制度的摧毁”。表达几个动作,汉语一般用动词集结表达法。

- [68] A single currency was accepted as the logical **extension to the removal of** these trade barriers. (《研究生英语阅读》)

单一货币被认为是进一步扩大取消这些贸易的障碍。

两个动作,英语可以用抽象名词的集结来表达,而汉语无法这样表达,不能说“是这些贸易障碍的取消的扩大。”

- [69] Yet to both classes **the need of an alternative outlook, of a change of atmosphere, of a diversion of effort**, is essential. (《新概念英语 4》)

可是这两类人都需要改换视野,变化环境,转移精力。

汉语不说“视野的改换,环境的变化,精力转移的需要”。

- [70] It is most important to think about the kinds of societies that could result from **the rise of new forms of interaction**, even if one cannot predict exactly when they might occur (《大学英语第六册》)

思考一下因出现越来越多相互作用的新形式而可能产生的各种社会团体是非常重要的。尽管人们现在还无法确切预测它们何时会出现。

显然汉语中是没有“**the rise of new forms of interaction**,”这样的抽象名词结构表达的。也就是说,表达同样的意思,英语可以用抽象名词结构,而汉语就不一定行。

可见,英语中抽象名词 N + of + N + of + N 的集结,在汉语中是无法做到的,所以只能用动词集结来解决。

其三,英语重形合,重严谨,汉语偏意合,偏流散(王峻岩, 1998, 126)。英语句子严谨,它可以通过各种语法关系,构建结构。

因此抽象名词词组的运用如鱼得水,不仅没有限制,而且比较适合。而汉语句法由于语法关系不发达,只能以时间先后,逻辑因果为顺序构建句子,这样就形成了以动作为主线的流散的句子形式。

如:

- [71] A foretaste of the seriousness of incivility is suggested by what have been happening in Houston. (《英汉对比研究》)

休斯顿所发生的情况预示:如果不讲文明,将会产生何种严重的后果。

- [72] Sickness had robbed her of her confidence that she could carry the load. (《汉英语对比纲要》)

她疾病缠身,丧失了挑起这副重担的信心。

汉语只能以这样的因果关系构建句子:先条件或原因后结果,进行这样的具体表达。正是英汉这种句法结构的差异,我们往往把英语称作“名词优势于动词”语言(the language with preponderance of nouns over verbs),而把汉语称为“动词优势于名词”语言。或者说英语句法呈静态倾向,汉语句法呈动态倾向。

3.4.3 从表达方式来看,英语习惯抽象思维,而汉语习惯具体思维。除了上面提到的例子,英语中非人称主语也是抽象思维的一种表现。钱歌川(1976)说“我们说英语时,惯常都要用人或生物做主语,而英文则爱用无生物做主语”。连叔能(1993,77)也指出“非人称表达法乃是英语常见的一种文风,尤其常见于书面语”。而非人称主语主要是由抽象名词构成的。如:

- [73] No wonder the sight of it should send the memories of quite a number of the old generations back 36 years ago. (《英语理解与翻译》)

难怪老一辈的许多人见了这东西,就会回想起36年前的往事。

- [74] That tolerance for change also represents deeply rooted ideas of

freedom. (《研究生基础英语 II》)

我们容忍变化, 同样表明了我们头脑中根深蒂固的自由观念。

由于 sight, tolerance 的逻辑主语是人, 因此用这些抽象名词当主语来表示人的动作是很自然的, 但汉语的句法不容许用相应的抽象名词, 只能用具体的人。

也就是说, 在句首主语位置上英语用抽象名词很顺, 而汉语一般是用具体的人, 这就限制了抽象名词结构的使用。

- [75] **His departure** brought to an end the long period of negotiations and discussions begun in January 1946. (《英译汉理论与实例》)

因为他离开此地回国, 从 1946 年 1 月开始的长期谈判和讨论终告结束。

- [76] **His weariness and increasing heat** determined him to sit down in the first convenient shade. (《英汉语比较与翻译》)

他疲惫不堪, 加之天气越来越热, 于是他下定决心一碰到舒适的阴凉处就坐下休息。

- [77] **The slightest hint of disagreement**, from anyone, on the most trivial point, was enough to set him off on a harangue that might last for hour. (《大学英语 6》)

任何人只要稍微有点和他分歧的看法, 哪怕是琐事, 也会足以使他几个小时不停地驳斥。

- [78] **Hope** persisted in Marshall because the only alternative was a military solution. (《英译汉理论与实例》)

马歇尔舍不得放弃希望, 因为惟一的其他出路就是军事解决。

- [79] **Absence and distance** make the overseas Chinese heart increasingly fond of the Peking regime. (《英译汉理论与实例》)

华侨离乡背井, 远居国外, 因此他们在感情上越来越向往北京政权。

- [80] A more rational **perspective** would see that all organic life is of equal importance. (Developing Reading Skill)

如果我们以更理性的角度来观察问题,就会发现所有有机生命都是同等重要的。

- [81] From the moment we stepped into the People's Republic of China, **care and kindness** surrounded us on every side. (Hewlett and Nowell Johnson: To China at Ninety)

我们一踏上中华人民共和国国土,就会随时随地受到关怀与照顾。

- [82] **Loneliness** held the great masses of immigrants together, and poverty kept them down. (《汉英语对比纲要》)

这些移民只身在外,举目无亲,所以聚居一处,而且经济支绌,难于发展。

## 第四章 抽象名词表达的搭配及其运用

从上面几章中,我们可以看到抽象名词的表达效果及其普遍性。那么我们中国人学英语写作,是否有必要去学习这一表达呢?答案是肯定的。

有的语法学家或外语教育者提倡,英语写作“能用具体词就不用抽象词”,因为具体名词生动简洁,而抽象词尤其是抽象名词内容虚泛,结构复杂,表达方式转弯抹角,常常影响意义的表达。这种说法不是没有道理。如 Ernest Gower 给以下一些句子作比较:

[1a] There has been persistent instability in numbers of staff.

[1b] Staff has continually varied in numbers.

职工人数经常变动,很不稳定。

[2a] The cessation of house-building operated over a period of five years.

[2b] No houses were built for five years.

五年里没有建造过房子。

[3a] The availability of figures may prove to be an obstacle to the efficiency of the whole of proposed statistical content of the exercise.

[3b] Lack of figures may make it difficult to produce accurate statistics.  
数据不足会使准确的统计变得困难。

[4a] The actual date of the completion of the purchase should coincide with the availability of the new facilities.

[4b] The purchase should not be completed until the new facilities are available.

必须等到有了这些新设备,才应购买这批货。

显而易见,b的具体表达比a的抽象表达更直截了当,也因此

简洁明了。但这不是说抽象名词表达并没有自己的优点。我们从前面的第二章中已经清楚地看到了抽象名词表达的修辞效果。因此恰当地使用抽象名词,其生动性和简洁性甚至超过具体名词的表达。

对中国学生来说,学会用抽象名词表达,对于提高英语写作水平相当重要。它不仅能够克服母语思维表达在英语写作中的负迁移,减少动词的使用,避免不必要的具体表达,而且还能使英语句子简洁、紧凑、含蓄,从而使得句子的英语味道更浓,更符合英美人的语言表达习惯。

那么如何有意识地、正确地使用抽象名词的表达?下面我们 从抽象名词的结构模式和抽象名词的常用表达两方面进行介绍。

#### 4.1 抽象名词表达的基本模式

A1. N( + of) + V

the lack/use/control/support of

1. They thought that an ever higher standard of living and a bigger GNP, a **gradual unification of** Europe, **plus the protection of** the United States, could solve all possible problems.

他们认为只要生活水平不断提高,国民生产总值增长,欧洲逐渐统一,加上美国的保护伞,所有问题就都解决了。

2. So even if the birthrate should rise somewhat, **little expansion** is possible for elementary and secondary school enrollment.

因此,即使出生率有所提高,小学和初中的入学人数也不可能有什么增长。

3. **The establishment of** a solid manufacturing and mining industry has kept Victoria's unemployment rate the lowest in the country.

由于建立了经济实力雄厚的制造业和采矿业,维多利亚州的失



业率一直是全国最低的。

4. Second, **the distribution of** food and the yield of food per acre can improved. Third, **population growth** can be controlled.

第二,粮食作物分布状况可以改善,每英亩土地的粮食产量可以提高。第三,人口增长可以控制。

5. **The ordering and importance** of multiple objectives is also based, in part, on the values of the decision maker.

多重目标的安排和重要性部分也基于决策人的判断标准。

6. Professor Eagleson warned that serious **injustice** can result from unnecessarily complicated legal language.

伊格尔森教授警告说,这种过分复杂的法律语言会引起对百姓不公的严重后果。

7. One research report has shown that **comprehension and retention of reading** were decreased when students listened to lively music.

一项研究报告表明,当学生在听着欢快的音乐时,阅读的理解和记忆会下降。

**A2. sb.'s N( + of) + V**

**one's criticism/choice/selection/ support of**

1. **My selection of particular people** for inclusion in this series is purely subjective on my part and the people you will be reading are not the only people who have contributed to the growth and development of Western civilization.

我在这一系列文章中所选择的一些特定人物纯粹是我主观挑选的,因而你们要读到的这些人物并不是惟一对西方文明的形成和发展做出了贡献的人。

2. But **now our awareness** of it has grown so faint that four or five people can live together in one room, a situation which repeatedly occurs

in overcrowded slums.

但是我们对此的意识逐渐淡薄,现在四五人可以住在一间屋子里,这种情况在过分拥挤的贫民区里经常发生。

**A3. be + N( + of)**

**is/prove/become + N**

1. There are not enough of either kind to found a solid and long-lasting engagement that might one day **become the fusion** of the two peoples.  
双方都没有足够这样的人,能奠定一种坚定和持久的亲近感,有朝一日能促使两个民族的融合。
2. Daydreaming, science has discovered, **is an effective relaxation technique**. But its beneficial effects go beyond this.  
科学研究发现,做白日梦是一种有效的放松手段,但其有益影响远不止这一点。
3. The failure of writers to write, or of people to understand each other—all **these are indications** of the deeper evil.  
作家不能写作,人们相互不能了解——所有这一切表明了更深的罪恶。
4. Demand for education is actually going up, not down. What is going down, and fairly fast, **is demand for** traditional education in traditional schools.  
对教育的要求实际上是更高,而不是降低。所下降的,且降得很快的是对传统学校的传统教育要求。
5. Some concluded that the “evidence of life” **was mostly contamination** from Antarctic ice or that there was nothing organic at all in the rock.  
有些人得出结论说,这些“生命的证据”大多来自南极冰的污染,或者说那块石头里根本没有有机物。

**A4. be + of + N**  
**of importance/significance/value**

1. In high concentration the shift from the focus of attention **is of short duration** and relatively infrequent.

精力高度集中时,注意力焦点的转移很短暂,而且相对不那么频繁。

2. There is the economic principle that the dependency ratio is more advantageous in older societies like ours than in the younger societies of the developing world, because lots of dependent babies **are more of a liability** than numbers of the inactive aged.

根据经济原理,被抚养率高在我们这样老龄化社会比在发展中国家年轻化社会里要有利,因为大量的尚需抚养的孩子与一定数量的不能工作的老年人相比,负担更重。

3. We will have an intuitive knowledge that our attitudes toward life **are of critical importance** to our enjoyment of it.

我们有直觉表明:我们对生活的态度与我们能否享受生活至关重要。

4. The transistor **is of such overwhelming importance** because it makes practical hundreds of electronic devices which were previously too bulky, too expensive or too unreliable for everyday use.

晶体管是非常重要的,因为它使得在过去因体积太大,价钱太贵,或不大稳定而难以用于日常生活的千百种电器变得实用了。

**A5. be + Ved( + as) + N**  
**be viewed/regarded/thought of as a**

1. The slogan was the idea of James Carville, Clinton's chief strategist,

and **was meant as a reminder** to the candidate and the staff to keep the campaign focused on the nation's slow-moving economy.

这条标语出自克林顿竞选幕僚的首席战略家詹姆斯·卡维尔的主意,其目的在于提醒候选人及其竞选班子要把竞选的焦点对准全国经济的呆滞状况。

2. Habitual daydreaming **was regarded as evidence of maladjustment or an escape from** life's realities and responsibilities.

习惯性做白日梦被认为是一种精神失调的症状,或者是逃避生活的现实和责任。

3. They **are** too easily **regarded as evaluated certainties** rather than as the rawest of raw material crying to be processed into the texture of logic.

它们太容易被看做是已评价过的确凿的东西,而不是迫切需要处理,使之具有逻辑条理的原始材料中最原始的材料。

4. It may **be regarded as a substitute for** intelligence instead of an extension of it. It may **promote undue confidence** in concrete answers. 它可能被认为是智力的代替物,而不是智力的扩展;它可能会促成对具体答案的过分自信。

**A6. V + N + of + N**

**promote/create/provide/enhance/foster/facilitate/  
accelerate/protect/ control the N of N**

1. We should by no means **neglect the evaporation** of water.

我们决不能忽视水的蒸发作用。

2. Coupled with the growing quantity of information is the rapid development of technologies which **enable the storage and delivery of** more information with greater speed to more locations than has ever been possible before.

在信息量不断增多的同时,技术也在迅速发展,这使得人们能以更快的速度储存更多的信息,并以更快的速度把更多的信息送到更多的地方去。

3. Such a transformation is possible if we recognize that our present way of life makes us sterile and eventually **destroys the vitality** necessary for survival.

如果我们认识到我们目前的生活方式使我们无所作为,并且最终会毁灭我们生存所必需的活力,那么这种转变是可能的。

4. Jack London **poured** into his writings all the pain of his life, the **fierce hatred of the bourgeoisie** that it had produced in him.

杰克·伦敦把他生活中遭受的一切痛苦,以及这些痛苦在他心中产生的对资产阶级的刻骨仇恨都倾注到他的作品中去。

5. The publishing house has to **take the readability of the novel** into consideration.

出版社不得不考虑这部小说的可读性。

**A7. V + to + N**

**contribute/lead/amount/adapt to**

1. The availability of venture capital financing to young, high technology companies **has been a primary contributor to the dramatic revenue growth** enjoyed by, and **the increased competitiveness of**, America's high technology industry.

新开业的高技术公司可以获得风险资本融资,这对美国高技术产业收入的大幅度增长和竞争力的提高都起了重要作用。

2. Decision makers must have some way of determining which of several alternatives is best—that is, which **contributes the most to the achievement** of organizational goals.

决策人必须具备有从多个可供选择的可能性中确定最佳选择,

即最有助于实现组织目标的手段。

3. Basically, such attitudes **amount to a recognition** that leisure is an important area of life and **a belief** that leisure can and should be put to good use.

一般说来,这些态度反映出这样一种认识:休闲是生活中重要的一部分;也反映出这样一个信仰:休闲能够也应该好好加以利用。

4. Public awareness of the environment has created a surge of interest in home gardening and urban horticulture and **has led to the increased use of landscaping** to modify the functional and aesthetic aspects of the surroundings.

公众对环境意识的增强使人们对家庭园艺和城市园艺产生了极大的兴趣,并使人们越来越多地使用环境美化技术来改善周围的环境,使其既实用又美观。

**A8. be + Ved + with + N**

**be satisfied with/ be filled with/be associated with**

1. No one **is satisfied with** his favoritism in his work.

对他在工作中表现出来的徇私做法谁都感到不满意。

2. I **must comfort myself with** the greatness and splendor of my rivals, whose work will rob my own of recognition.

我的竞争对手实在是博大精深,才华横溢,所以他们的著作才会使我的作品默默无闻,我必须借此聊以自慰。

3. However, all the scientists agree that more data is necessary to prove that radon levels in water **are associated with the possible birth of** an earthquake.

不过,所有的科学家都一致认为,需要有更多的资料才能证明水中氡的含量与可能产生的地震有关联。

4. When these headlines appeared this year, their stories became the subjects of conversations around the world—talks **spiced with optimism and confusion**.

当这些消息出现在今年的报纸上时,它们成了全世界谈论的议题,谈论中有乐观的看法,也有惘然的疑虑。

**A9. be + Ved + by + N**  
**driven/surprised/heightened by**

1. Their initial trepidation **was heightened by the presence** of my six-foot-four-inch father.

当我身高六英尺四英寸的父亲出现时,他们最初的恐怖心情更是有增无减。

2. Before Jack London, the fiction dealing with the working class **was characterized by sympathy** for labor and the underprivileged.

在杰克·伦敦之前,描写工人阶级的小说常带有同情工人和下层人的特点。

3. The overseas visitor must not **be disappointed by this apparent** lack of interest and involvement: he must realize that “all right”, “not bad”, and “nice” are very often used as superlatives with the sense of “first-class”, “excellent”, “beautiful”.

海外游客千万不要因为英国人表面上缺乏兴致或情趣而感到失望。要知道,英国人经常把“还行”、“不错”、“美”当作最高级形容词来使用,表达“一流的”、“极好的”、“美极了”的意思。

4. A man is a laborer if the job society offers him is of no interest to himself but he **is compelled to take it by the necessity** of earning a living and supporting his family.

如果他本人对社会提供的工作毫无兴趣,但他为了赚钱养家又不得不去做,那他就是一个劳动者。

5. I see one world, but not a world drab in its uniformity but one **enriched by its diversity**.

我看到的世界并不是一个清一色的单调的世界,而是一个多样化的丰富的世界。

**A10. V + prep. + N**  
**benefit from/depend on**

1. We have to **grow in our understanding** of one another. This does not mean that we have to grow more alike.

我们必须增强相互了解,这并不意味着我们必须变得更加相似。

2. Painters, writers, and composers also have **drawn heavily on their sensitivity** to inner fantasies.

画家、作家和作曲家都极注意利用他们对内心幻想的敏感力。

3. The poet **reminds men of their uniqueness**. It is not necessary to possess the ultimate definition of this uniqueness. Even to speculate on it is a gain.

诗人唤醒人们的独特性。但没必要给这一独特性下最终的定义。甚至对它进行猜测也是有好处的。

4. Both men and women, nine times out of ten, are firmly **convinced of the superior excellence** of their own sex.

不论男女,十之八九的人都深信自己的性别优越无比。

**A11. there is a + N**  
**there is realization/awareness of / interest/increase in/  
demand for/ agreement about**

1. In addition to this, **there is the growing mobility** of people since World War II.



除此之外,我们还面临着第二次世界大战以来日益增长的人口流动问题。

2. **There is the appreciation of** the salient historical truth that the aging of advanced societies has been a sudden change.

人们了解这样一个明显的历史事实:发达社会的老龄化是一种突变。

3. **There is often resistance** to the idea that it is because the birthrate fell earlier in Western and Northwestern Europe than elsewhere, that we have grown so old.

人们常常反对这种看法,即因为西欧和西北欧比别的地方出生率下降得早,我们的社会才成为如此老龄化。

4. To be sure, under the placid surface of life **there always was dissatisfied restlessness** ever since the end of the Allied occupation regime.

的确,自从盟国占领制度结束以来,在表面平静的生活下面一直存在着不满和不安的情绪。

5. **There is virtual unanimity** that the social problems engulfing low-income African-Americans are hellishly complicated.

低收入的美国黑人普遍面临的社会问题极为复杂,这一点人们的看法几乎是一致的。

6. There was much **speculation** in the world press as to whether or not he had died in a state of grace.

世界报刊上有许多猜疑,怀疑他是否体面而死。

**A12. have + a + N**

**have a understanding/appreciation of/ interest in/  
passion/enthusiasm for**

1. Mr. Fleagle **had a reputation** among students **for** dullness and inability to inspire.

费利格先生在学生中是以说活干巴和不能激励学生而出名的。

2. It is a well-known fact that the English **have an obsession with** their weather and that, given half a chance, they will talk about it at length.

大家知道,英国人对天气情有独钟。一说到天气,话就没个完。

3. Scientists **have only a partial understanding of** the physical processes that cause earthquakes.

科学家们只是部分地了解导致地震的物理过程。

4. Anyone who **has an appreciation for** history should be cognizant of the fact that nations and great civilizations were not destroyed from without but from within.

任何人只要了解历史的就应该知道这个事实:国家及其伟大的文明社会都是从内部而不是从外部被攻破的。

**A13. make a + N**

**make a choice/contribution/analysis/remark/comment**

1. You cannot speak any of the necessary dialects, and when you **make a stupid remark** its stupidity will be obvious, even to yourself.

你不能再说任何必要的套话,你若说了蠢话,其愚蠢是显而易见甚至对你自己也是如此。

2. The pharmacologists are **making a careful study** of the allergy of the medicine.

药理学家们正在认真研究此药的过敏性。

**A14. A + N + of + N would/will**

**a study/knowledge/examination of...would reveal/  
conclude that**

1. A **serious commitment to** national independence and individual e-

quality thus **rules out** capitalism as the means to development, and forces us to choose socialism.

因此,如果我们真想实现民族独立和个人平等的话,就决不能把资本主义作为发展的手段,就必须选择社会主义。

2. A **closer consideration**, however, **would indicate** that the potentialities of the project as means of inspiring confidence acquire real importance.

然而,仔细考虑一下,就会发现这个项目作为激发一个人信心的潜力获得了其真正的重要性。

3. An **investigation of** the relative effectiveness of various swim-strokes would have to detail the number of swimmers tested. (College English 6)

倘若要研究各种游泳姿势的相应效果,就必须说清楚游泳测试的人数。

4. Even a **moment's reflection will** show that the spoken American language is backed by expressive features lacking in the written language. 稍微考虑一下就会发现美国口语充满了许多书面语体里所没有的表达性特点。

5. **Withdrawal from and neutralization of** Germany **would be** disastrous, Acheson warned.

艾奇逊警告说,无论是从德国撤军还是让德国中立化,都会带来灾难性的后果。

**A15. be + adj. + to + N**

**be important/essential/basic/indispensable/central to**

1. Norway is, quite naturally, paying great attention to developments in Europe and in the Atlantic community, **which are so instrumental to the maintenance** of peace and security in our part of the world.

挪威自然十分关切欧洲和大西洋国家的发展,因为这些发展大大有助于维护世界上我们这一地区的和平与安全。

2. The use of animals **has been central to the development of anaesthetics**, vaccines and treatments of for diabetes, cancer, developmental disorders.

使用动物进行研究对麻醉学、疫苗的发展和糖尿病、癌、发育失调的治疗极为重要。

3. Human-resource management is not traditionally **seen as central to the competitive survival of the firm** in the United States. Skill acquisition is considered an individual responsibility.

在美国,人才资源管理传统上并不认为对公司的竞争生存很重要。学习技术被看做是个人的事。

4. If the career of Churchill or Lincoln proves anything, such training is **as important to a mastery of the art of politics** as it is to medicine, or the law.

如果丘吉尔或林肯的生涯可以证明什么的话,那么这种训练对掌握政治艺术与掌握医学或法律同样重要。

5. Insensitivity of the mother to the child's babbling, grasping and smiling dulls the interaction and discourages the child. Sensitivity to his non-verbal signals **is essential to the growth and development of language**.

做母亲的,如果对孩子咿呀学语、抓东西或笑不理睬的话,就会使他们以后不愿交往,就会使他们失去兴趣。而对这些非语言信号的敏感对孩子的语言发展是不可缺少的。

6. The flowering of many great discoveries is not on the spurt of the moment, but is preceded by years of patient, arduous work. Hence, intense interest plus persistent effort is **indispensable to the highest success** in any sphere of human activity.

许多重大发明的出现并不是一时冲动,而是多年来耐心、刻苦工作的结果。因此强烈的兴趣和坚持不懈的努力是人类在任何领域里取得最大成功所不可缺少的。

**A16. N + be + N**

1. **Instead, the battle cry for the '90s will be the demand for performance and accountability.**

相反,90年代的强烈呼声将要求人们工作出色和承担责任。

2. **The primary end of marriage in this view is the procreation and education of children.**

从这一点看,婚姻的最终目的是生育和教育孩子。

**A17. N + V + N**

1. **His arrogance sent him into isolation and helplessness.**

他的傲慢态度使他孤立无援。

2. **Growth of trade will depend greatly on availability of energy sources.**

贸易增长在很大程度上取决于能源的供应。

3. **In many cases, admiration for religious leaders went hand in hand with respect for science.**

在很多情况下,对宗教领袖的敬佩和对科学的尊重是一致的。

4. **For the first time in human history, the problem of man's survival has to do with his control of man-made hazard.**

人类历史上第一次——人类的生存问题不得不依赖于如何控制他们自己造成的危害。

5. **From this kind of rejection comes a complete lack of any feeling of common humanity; the suffering of a human being ceases to be real because he has ceased to be a real human being.**

这种抵制造成了一般人性感情的完全丧失,一个人的受罪不再是真实的,因为他不再是一个真正的人。

**A18. N + of, N + of, and N + of + V**

1. **Reduced consumption of meat, increased use of new high-protein food made from soybeans, and development of ocean resources for food** are some alternatives that must be considered.

减少肉类消费,更多地食用大豆制的高蛋白食品,开发海洋的食品资源,都是必须予以考虑的方案。

2. **The splendor of her wedding, the elegance of dress and veil, the cutting of the cake, the departure amid a shower of rice and confetti,** gave her an accolade of which no subsequent event could completely rob her.

壮观的婚礼,高雅的婚服和婚纱,切开蛋糕,缓缓离开飘洒的稻谷和五彩纸,这一切给了她最大的嘉奖,随后的事没有一件能够抹掉这一嘉奖。

3. **The purchase, the health care, the feeding and housing and training of a pet** cost time and money.

购买宠物随之护理、喂养、关管及训练都要花费时间和金钱。

**A19. V + N + of, N + of, and N + of**

1. **The family is going through stormy times, and millions of children are paying the penalty of current disorganization, experimentation and discontent.**

家庭正经历动荡时期,千百万孩子正因目前家庭的肢解,试验新的家庭模式以及人们的不满而受罪。

2. **It seems to me that our nation is going through a gigantic loss of nerve, a massive decline in faith in ourselves.**

依我的看法,似乎我们的国家正在大大失去勇气,自信心也正在急速下降。

3. Pippa's rehabilitation to the wild **required patience, perseverance, love, and the same kind of respect** for her as a being that I would have offered a fellow human.

皮帕回归自然野生需要的是耐心、坚毅、爱心和给予人类一样的尊敬。

4. Primarily, retirement **was associated with awareness** of a declining state of health, **with tiredness** and **with the strains and pressures** of the work situation.

最主要的是,退休使人们联想起健康状况的下降,身心的疲倦,以及工作带来的紧张与压力。

5. Nor do they connect a man to the things he has to be connected to—**the reality of pain in others; the possibilities of** creative growth in himself; **the memory of** the race; and **the rights of** the next generation.

他们也不把一个人和他应该联系的事物联系起来,如他人痛苦的现实、人类创造力发展的可能性、人类的记忆力,以及下一代人的权力等。

6. The right to Board representation **is generally protected** through various other contractual provision, including **a limitation on** the removal of the Board representative, **a limitation on** increases in the number of directors, ....

风险资本家在公司董事会的代表权,一般通过各种其他合同条款予以保障,包括对撤换董事会代表的限制、对增加董事人数的限制……。

7. But the oil crisis of 1974 has led to **renewed interest** in coal and to a **search for** alternative sources of energy.

然而,1974年的石油危机使人们对煤炭再度产生兴趣,并且去寻找可供选择的其它能源。

8. Woman, on the other hand, **represents stability, flexibility, reliance** on intuition, and **harmony** with nature.

另一方面,妇女表现出来的是稳重、灵活、对直觉的依赖和对自然的融洽。

9. The images **become indispensable to the health of the economy, the stability of the polity, and the pursuit of private happiness.**

这些形象对健康的经济,稳定的政局和追求个人幸福是不可缺少的。

**A20. N + conj./prep. + N**

**not only...but also,/as much as.../...rather than...**

1. Our anger is prompted **not only by the fear of being** used by our confidants, **but also by the shame** of having renounced our solitude.  
(Expanding Reading Skill)

我们的气愤不仅仅是由于害怕被知己利用所造成的,还因为羞于放弃独居所致。

2. In addition, our masculine integrity is as much endangered **by kindness as it is by hostility.**

除此之外,我们男子的正直感正面临威胁,不仅仅因为遭遇敌视态度,还因为受到了仁慈的款待。

3. Jacobson remarked that for both sexes, a favorable orientation towards retirement appeared to reflect constraints or **resignation rather than choice.**

杰克伯森指出,无论男女,工人们退休所表现的赞同倾向,看来并不表明退休是他们的自愿选择,而是反映了他们所受的种种限制或无可奈何的心态。



4. Reluctance among men to retire was associated with anticipated **deprivations, mainly of money rather than of attachment** to work.

男性不愿退休,与他们预想中将要失去很多东西有关,其中主要的是失去赚钱的机会,而不是丧失对工作的依恋之情。

5. Although it is acceptable for a man to hold a paid job even when he has other, adequate sources of income, a married woman who works outside the home for **satisfaction rather than necessity** contributes both to **the unemployment** of others and to growing **inequalities** between rich and poor.

对一个男人来说,虽然有其他丰厚收入来源之外,再拥有一份有报酬的工作是可以接受的,但已婚妇女为求精神快乐而非经济需要的在外工作则会造成他人失业,并加剧穷富之间的不平等。

6. There are numerous **examples of kindness and understanding** on the part of owner **as well as docility and tractability** on the part of the slave.

有许许多多的例子表明奴隶主的仁慈和善解人意,同样也有许许多多的例子表明奴隶的听话和温顺。

7. Winners successfully make the transition **from total helplessness to independence**.

胜利者成功地从完全无助过渡到独立。

**A21. V + N + with + N**

**combine...with.../reconcile...with.../confuse...with...**

1. Young people are unable to see the killing of an enemy as different from the murder of one's own children, and they cannot **reconcile the efforts** to save our own children by every means **with our willingness** to pour napalm on other people's children.

年轻人不能看到杀死敌人和杀死自己的孩子有什么不同。他们不能把用一切手段拯救我们的孩子的努力和我们把凝固汽油浇在其他人的孩子身上的愿望统一起来。

2. There may be a tendency to mistake data for wisdom, just as there has always been a tendency to **confuse logic with values, and intelligence with insight**.

可能会有一种误把数据当作智慧的倾向,正好像经常存在的逻辑与价值相混淆、智力与洞察力相混淆的倾向一样。

3. Smith **combined a lofty vision of a decent society with** an exacting analysis of the means of attaining it.

斯密斯把对正直社会的崇高憧憬和对达到这一目标的手段进行严格分析结合了起来。

4. The poverty of the immigrants, largely from Ireland and Northern Europe, caused many people in rural America to **equate poverty with personal inferiority**—a point of view that has not yet disappeared from our national thinking.

那些主要是从爱尔兰和北欧来的移民的贫穷,使得美国农村的许多人把贫穷看做是人格上的问题,这种观点始终没有从我们民族的意识中消除。

5. A century ago, the adolescent's **departure** from home **coincided with** physical **maturation**. Today, sexually mature adolescents may spend seven or eight years in the company of their parents.

一个世纪前,青少年离开父母独立生活的时候正好是他们身体发育成熟的时候。而今天已发育成熟的青少年或许还要和他们的父母一同生活七八年。

**A22. Prep. + N**

**owing to/despite/ with/ without + N**

1. The investment occurs **prior to the organization** of the company or the development of an actual product.

风险资本是在公司组建之前或一个实际产品开发之前投入进去的。

2. **Owing to the interdependence** between pure and applied science, it is easy to see that this system, if extended too far, carries considerable dangers for the future of science—and not only pure science, but applied science as well.

由于纯科学和应用科学之间存在依赖关系,这就很容易看到这种体制如果任意发展下去,会给纯科学和应用科学的未来带来相当大的危险。

3. He believed that a great part of his business success was **due to positive use of daydreams**.

他认为他事业成功的很大一部分是由于主动利用了做白日梦。

4. Many changes take place **during the transformation**.

在转化过程中出现了许多变化。

**A23. a kind/degree/sense/level/state/feeling of + N**

**a degree of responsibility/perfection/familiarity/development/efficiency**

**an amount of interest/confidence/practice/ignorance/damage**

**a mixture of joy and anxiety**

**the feeling of helplessness/relief/satisfaction/impatience**

**a sense of responsibility/gratitude/justice/disappointment**

**a state of despair/ indignation/ nervousness/confusion/depression**

**a kind of abuse/suspicion**

**a level of success/excellence/humanity/respect**

1. Some students need prescribed daily doses of information; others need challenge and a **high degree of responsibility** for the design of their own work.

有些学生需要定出每日的信息量,另一些需要挑战和以高度的责任感去设计自己的工作。

2. **With this high degree of specialization**, the frontiers of knowledge are steadily being pushed back more rapidly than ever before.

随着专业化程度的提高,各门知识的边界正在以前所未有的速度往里收缩。

3. Greatness is built upon **tremendous amounts of study**, practice and devotion.

伟大是建立在大量的学习、实践和献身工作之上的。

4. I couldn't help looking at them **with a certain amount of curiosity**.

我禁不住以有些好奇的眼光打量着他们。

5. It is a poor ideal and pursuing it does a great deal of harm. This ideal also **contains a tremendous amount of selfishness**.

这是一个糟糕的理想,追求它会有很大的害处。这个理想还包含许多自私的东西。

6. When they apply for their first job, they are tested for intelligence as well as for the right **mixture of submissiveness and independence**.

他们从申请第一份工作起就受到考察,不仅考察他们的智力情况,而且还考察他们的绝对服从和独立工作的两面性。

7. The highlight of the evening, however, is Joanna Burling's wife, who seizes the imagination of the audience **with her mixture of resignation and attractiveness** that is just beginning to fade.

然而,那天晚上最引人注目的人物是乔安娜扮演的贝林妻子,她以与世无争的表情,加上她那刚刚开始消退的美貌,抓住了观众的想像力。

8. When feelings of helplessness or insignificance set in, the neuro-endocrine system shifts into overdrive and disease may become far more likely.

当出现一种无助的、微不足道的情感时, 神经内分泌系统就会转到加速挡, 这样就很可能出现疾病。

9. I had no **feeling of rootlessness** because each time I moved, the next job offered a higher status or salary.

我并没有一种没有根的感觉, 因为每次调动, 新的工作给予了我更高的地位, 更高的薪水。

10. He was so amazed by the extraordinary **sense of peace**, calm, and total painlessness associated with being killed that he constructed a theory that all creatures are provided with a protective physiologic mechanism.

他被那些(人)在被杀前所表现出来的那种非凡的安宁感、镇静感和无痛感所震惊, 于是他创建了一种理论, 即所有生命都有一种保护性的生理机制。

11. If someone reading this feels a **sense of moral outrage** because we are sitting down on the job, I am sorry.

如果有人读到这里就为我们消极怠工而感到道义上的愤慨, 我将感到抱歉。

12. And they appear to exhibit sorrow or show a **sense of loss** when one of the pair dies.

当配偶中死了一个, 另一个显然表现出一种忧伤或失落。

13. When people see animals in this condition, they get the impression that the animals are either dangerous and aggressive or, if they have fallen into a **state of utter despair**, that they are lethargic or stupid.

当人们看到动物处于这种情况, 他们就会产生这样的印象: 动物或者是危险的、凶猛的, 或者当它们陷入绝望的境地, 就会

变得呆滞或愚蠢。

14. And even as late as 1965, none of them were expressing any radically **new states of consciousness**.

甚至到了1965年时它们中仍无一能表现出任何一种全新的感觉状态。

15. The book you read for pleasure can be read in **a state of relaxation**, nothing is lost.

为乐趣而读的书读起来应很放松,不需要付出什么。

16. And so deep has **this kind of blindness** entered that no work of any real worth has been produced in South Africa for many years.

这种盲视如此根深蒂固,致使好些年以来南非没有出版过任何真正有价值的作品。

17. In a healthy nation there is **a kind of dynamic balance** between the will of the people and the government which prevents its degeneration into tyranny.

在一个健康的国家里,人民的意志和政府之间存在着一种动态平衡,足以防止政府实施暴政。

18. It takes years of constant academic toil to reach **a level of sophistication** essential to function effectively in today's very complex world.

要达到能在今天这个复杂的社会里有效地工作这种高级水平,需要多年不断的刻苦学习。

19. He has reached **a level of admiration** and public respect unprecedented in recent years. So soon enough you can expect the attempts at destruction to begin.

公众对他的钦佩和尊敬,已达到了近几年来从未有过的程度。但很快你就会看到有人开始试图诋毁他了。

## 4.2 抽象名词的常用搭配

下面一些是与抽象名词经常搭配的动词、形容词和介词。

**B1. ADD: add to the attraction/comfort/interest/pleasure/  
the income/the power/dignity**

1. This is a staggering price tag. It will **add significantly to the cost of health** insurance premiums for all of us. It will eat into the budgets for medicaid and medicare.

这个价格极其可怕。它会大大地增加我们每个人的医疗保险金成本,吃掉医疗补助和医疗保健的预算。

2. A man worked diligently at his calling **not so much** in order to accumulate personal wealth **as to add to the comfort and convenience of the community**.

一个有着使命感并且勤奋工作的人与其说为了积聚个人财富,还不如说是为了给整个社区带来更多的舒适和方便。

3. By taking a ten-or fifteen-minute vacation into the realm of imagination each day, you may **add much to the excitement and enjoyment of your life**.

每天用 10 分钟到 15 分钟假设到想象的王国里去遨游一番,可以给你的生活增添许多兴奋和乐趣。

**B2. ALONG WITH: along with the development/decline/  
increase**

1. **Along with the decline of public esteem of our profession**, we have witnessed the decline in the public confidence in the media.

随着公众对我们这个职业尊重的下降,我们看到公众对媒介的信心也在下降。

2. But along with the burgeoning dedication to a serious search, a slightly negative note has **emerged** which is nevertheless very interesting.

但是,随着人们越来越献身于认真研究的时候,出现了一种稍带否定意味但却十分有趣的调子。

**B3. AS A RESULT OF: as a result of the negotiation/  
discussion/consideration**

1. We are all deeply concerned about reports of the destruction of our environment **as a result of technological recklessness, overpopulation, and the lack** of consideration to the preservation of nature.

(《研究生英语阅读》)

我们深切关心有关破坏环境的报道,这些破坏是由于只顾发展技术不考虑后果,或人口增长过快,或缺少对保护自然的考虑所造成的。

2. **Also as a result of the expansion** of these suburban rings, many metropolitan areas have grown so large in recent decades that they have overlapped and have begun to merge.

市郊的发展所产生的结果是大城市的面积最近几十年来越来越扩大,城郊开始结合了。

**B4. ACCELERATE: accelerate the control/use/  
development of**

1. Government-sponsored investment programs designed to foster small business creation and growth in the United States also have **accelerated the use** of venture capital financings.

政府主办的旨在扶持美国小企业创业和发展的投资项目,也加快了对风险资本融资的使用。

2. The new technology has led to changes in methods of production. It



**has accelerated the development of a market-orientated, capitalist agriculture.**

新技术改变了生产方法,同时也加速了面向市场的资本主义农业方式的发展。

**B5. AFTER: after (despite) many years(decades) of isolation/hostility/anticipation**

1. Nixon's role in restoring Sino-US relations in 1972, **after more than two decades of hostility and confrontation**, earned him a degree of respect in China unmatched by any other American politician and the standing to engage in plain speaking.

中美两国相互敌对,历经 20 多个春秋,终于在 1972 年恢复正常关系,尼克松在其中起了很大作用。这使他在中国赢得了一种其他任何美国官员所不能攀比的尊敬,也使他有了与中国领导人直言不讳的资格。

2. **After a childhood of suburban ease** and coming of age in the years of endless promise, they are now struggling to adjust to a life of contracting limits not suffered by their parents.

他们曾在市郊度过了无忧无虑的童年,对前程充满无限希望的岁月又伴随他们步入成年。现在他们却要竭尽全力来适应日益窘迫的生活。这种窘迫的生活是他们的父母不曾经历过的。

3. **Despite months of anticipation**, nothing could have prepared me for the impact of the actual day.

尽管盼望了好几个月,我还是不能准备好这一天到来对我的冲击。

**B6. AMID: amid mounting pressure/discontent**

1. **Amid mounting social discontent** over inflation, the government

leaders have used swift police action to drive home **the futility** of public protest.

由于通货膨胀,社会上的不满情绪不断加剧,在这种情况下,政府迅速动用了警力,让人们意识到举行公众抗议活动是徒劳的。

**B7. APPRECIATE: appreciate one's generosity/  
understanding/sympathy**

1. This will help you **appreciate the impact** these cultural forces have had on your values and thinking. As you become increasingly aware of the impact, you will **take a more active role in society**.

这有助于你理解这些文化势力对价值观和思想的影响。随着你越来越意识到这种影响,你就会在社会中起到更积极的作用。

2. Bitterly disappointed, he nevertheless **appreciated the folly of compelling** his son to persist in an occupation clearly unsuitable to him.

虽然他非常失望,但他了解迫使其儿子坚持去干明显不适合他工作的做法是愚蠢的。

**B8. AROUSE: arouse interest in/curiosity about/  
expectation of**

1. The prosperity of the cities **has aroused the rising expectations of** millions of impoverished peasants who still live a miserable life.

城市的繁荣激起了千百万农民不断高涨的期望。他们还过着痛苦的生活。

2. Such considerations must **arouse public interest** in basic research. 这样的考虑肯定引起公众对基础研究的兴趣。

**B9. ARISE/COME/DERIVE/EVOLVE/SPRING: Arise  
from understanding/knowledge/competition**

1. Instead, as they see, solutions must **evolve from a better understanding** of the humans that drive the system and **from a fuller appreciation of** the limits and potential of the earth's resources.

相反,他们认为,解决的方法必须来自于对驾驭这个制度的人的更好理解。来自于对地球资源的限度和潜力的更好了解。

2. Workers' concern over automation **arises from uncertainty** about the effects on employment, and the fears of major changes in jobs.

工人对采用自动化机器的担心,主要来自于他们不能确定它们对就业的影响并且害怕在工作上引起大变化。

3. The Asian's belief in hard work also **springs from their common heritage** of Confucianism, the philosophy of the 5th-century B. C., created by a Chinese sage who taught that man can be perfected through practice.

亚洲人对努力工作的信仰是来源于他们的共同遗产,即公元前五世纪的儒家哲学。其创始人,一位中国圣人教导说人可以通过不断练习而得到完善。

4. Men see danger more often in close personal relationship than in achievement and construe danger to **arise from intimacy**, while women perceive danger in impersonal achievement situations and construe danger to **result from competitive success**.

男人大多把危险看做与亲密的个人关系有关,而不是与成就有关,视危险来自于亲密关系,而女人把危险看做与非人因素的成就有关,视危险来自于竞争的成功。

5. One clung to the notion that wealth **derives its value from** its contribution to the general good and to the happiness of future generations. 人们坚持这样的看法,财富的价值来自于它对社会公益和下一代人幸福的贡献。

6. Much that is best and most innovative in education, culture, and po-

litical and social thought **results from the intellectual exchange** and excitement which city life makes possible.

教育、文化、政治和社会思想方面的改革,这一切都是由于知识的交流和振兴,而这使得城市生活变得可能。

**B10. AWAKEN/WAKE: awaken sb. (wake up) to the importance/menace/need**

1. The experience acquired and the lesson learned in this line can **awaken us students to the necessity of handling problems** on a human basis.

在这方面得到的经验和汲取的教训能使我们学生意识到处理人际关系问题的必要性。

2. But sometime in the past year, some women **woke up to the possibility** that what they had taken for granted could also be taken away.

但在去年某个时候,一些妇女醒悟到了存在这样的可能性,即她们认为理所当然地享有的东西也可能被夺走。

3. But seven years after the AIDs epidemic struck, young men are finally **beginning to wake up to the threat of the deadly disease**.

艾滋病是7年前突然流行起来的,但直到今天,年轻人才终于对这个致命的疾病的威胁开始警觉。

**B11. BE: be a violation/reflection/necessity of**

1. If higher education **is a preparation for** a better life, work is still the most time-consuming, even passionate component of our waking lives.

如果说高等教育是为了过一种好的生活做准备,那么工作是醒着时间里最耗费时间,甚至是充满了强烈感情的一部分。

2. What was also needed **was careful attention to** the ways in which our

own policies were compounding the problem of academic dishonesty on the campus.

我们所需要的是认真注意这些情况:即我们自己的政策使得校园里的作弊问题更严重。

**B12. BECAUSE: because of the use/refusal/shortage**

1. **Because of their intelligence and refusal to conform to society's anti-intellectual values**, many are deprived of a chance to learn adequate social skills and acquire good communication tools.

许多孩子因为智力高,不愿迎合社会上反知识的价值观,而被剥夺了学习足够的社交技能和获得良好的交际手段机会。

2. They began to know nature and, **because of nature's dependability**, found they could make predictions to enable some control over their surroundings.

人们开始了解自然,而由于自然的可靠性,人们还发现他们能够做出预测,从而有可能在某种程度上控制他们的周围环境。

3. **Because of the increasing use of cars**, public transportation has been allowed to wither and degenerate.

由于越来越多的人使用小汽车,因此公共交通日渐萎缩。

**B13. BECOME: become a necessity/possibility/reality/certainty**

1. Earlier in the twentieth century, this support was so firm and steady that the victory of the stronger party's candidate **became almost a certainty**.

在20世纪初期这种支持非常坚定和稳固,因此较强政党的候选人几乎注定能获胜。

2. Whatever the duration and objectives of the business alliances, being a

good partner has **become a key corporate asset**.

不管这种企业间的合作能持续多长时间,目标是什么,善于合作对公司来说极其重要。

3. Marriage **became a necessity** for everyone, for boys as well as for girls. express disapproval of lonely life.

对每个人来说,结婚成了必要,因为男女孩子都反对孤独的生活。

4. Surely we will have created a strongly competitive America that will **be the envy of the world**.

我们肯定会创造一个具有强大竞争力的美国,她将为全世界所羡慕。

**B14. BEYOND: beyond (the reach of) one's control/  
understanding/ability of**

1. Industry and great cities, conflicts between nations and the conquests of science moves relentlessly forward, seemingly **beyond the reach of individual control or even understanding**.

工业和大城市、国家间的冲突、科学的征服,所有这一切都无情地向前发展,似乎到了个人无法控制,甚至无法理解的地步。

2. Demands for social services which go **beyond the ability** of the cities to provide have, over time, created problems which make living in the cities less attractive.

对社会服务设施的要求已超过了城市力所能及的地步,结果造成了许多问题,使得城市居住变得越来越难以吸引人。

3. Many of life's problems which were solved by asking family members, friends or colleagues are **beyond the capability** of the extended family to resolve.

生活中的许多问题,过去只要问问家庭成员、朋友或同事就可得到解决,但现在,即便是几代同堂的大家庭也无法解决。

**B15. BOOST: boost the efficiency/productivity/development**

1. That **boosts the efficiency**, but a host of factors affect how much electricity and money are saved.  
这样做提高了效率,但是一系列因素影响了节约多少电和钱。
2. And to **boost technological development** governments channel money to selected firms in industries that are thought to be research-intensive, such as computer equipment, aerospace and pharmaceuticals.  
为了促进技术的发展,政府把钱投资到被认为是研究密集型的、有选择的企业上,如生产计算机、航天和药品工业等。

**B16. BREED: breed instability/hostility/independency**

1. Similarly, protectionist politics wastes the talents of the people, erodes governmental effectiveness, and thereby **breeds social instability**.  
同样,保护主义政策浪费人才,弱化政府职能的有效性,最终造成社会的不稳定。
2. Far from being a civilizing force, the plantation **breeds indecency in** human relations; and the slave was the immediate victim of the barbarity of the system.  
庄园制决非是文明势力,它在人类关系上产生了丑恶的一面,奴隶是这种野蛮制度的直接牺牲品。
3. The list of restrictions is endless—these are only a few small examples. But what they add up to is a division which **breeds hostility**.  
被限制内容的清单没完没了——这些只是小小的几个例子。但它们意味的是滋生敌对情绪的一堵墙。

**B17. BRING: bring enjoyment/satisfaction/explosion**

1. The growth of competitive industry and business **brought an explosion of** international marketing and advertising. (《研究生英语阅读》)  
工业和商业的激烈竞争,发展的结果是国际营销和广告的突飞猛进。
2. Since leisure is basically self-determined, one is able to take to one's interests and preference and get involved in an activity in ways that will **bring enjoyment and satisfaction**.  
由于休闲基本上是自己决定的事,个人就可以培养自己的兴趣和爱好,并以能为自己带来享受和满足的方式从事某项活动。

**B18. CAUSE: cause concern/harm**

1. Few problems on the American scene **cause so much concern and widespread public interest** as does the problem of youthful misbehavior and delinquency.  
在美国很少有像年轻人过失和犯罪更能引起公众的关心和兴趣的问题。
2. Pollution does not have to **cause physical harm**: pollutants such as noise and heat may **cause injury** but more often **cause psychological suffering**.  
污染不一定会造成身体伤害,像噪音和热这种污染可能会造成伤害,但更多的是造成心理上的伤害。
3. Wide use of the method to abort embryos of the undesired sex might **cause a marked imbalance** in the sex ratio in the population, which could **lead to change** in our present family structure.  
对不喜欢性别的胚胎,采用这种方法进行流产或许会造成人口性别比例的严重不平衡,而这又可能导致目前家庭结构的变化。



**B19. COME ABOUT: awareness/advance/change  
come about(take place)**

1. We might reflect on the **great advances** in the human situation that **have come about** because men were challenged by error and would not stop thinking and exploring until they found better approaches for dealing with it.

我们要仔细考虑一下人类环境方面所取得的巨大进步,因为人类受到了谬论的挑战,在没有找到更好的办法来对付它前,人类是不会停止钻研和探索的。

2. **Injustices and inequality took place** everywhere. And they had no resources to fall back on, no one to turn to for help.

非正义和不公平的现象到处都在发生。他们没有力量可依靠,也没有人可求得帮助。

3. I think that **this growing awareness has come about** in part because of the realization that our resources are not limitless.

我认为人们越来越意识到这一点的一部分原因是:他们认识到我们的能源是有限的。

4. In the early 1970s, **some improvement came about** in this field. Scientists developed an easy way to eliminate the disease.

到了 20 世纪 70 年代初期,这个领域有了些改进。科学家研究出了一种简单的方法来根除这种疾病。

**B20. COMPROMISE: compromise the quality/equality/  
effort**

1. US scientists, administrations and law makers are increasingly worried that the lure of money threatens to **compromise the quality and conduct** of scientific and medial research.

金钱的诱惑很可能危及科学和医学研究的开展和质量的提高。对此,美国的科学家、立法工作者和行政人员越来越担忧。

2. Many senior officers believe that expanding the roles of women to infantry units and other direct-combat jobs would disrupt the cohesion of fighting forces and could **compromise readiness of the US military**. 许多高级军官认为,把妇女在军队后勤二线所担当的职责,扩展到步兵单位及其他直接对抗的岗位,将影响作战部队的凝聚力,削弱美军的临战准备。

**B21. CONTRIBUTE: contribute to the understanding/solution/ growth of**

1. This study is notable for its **contribution to the understanding of genetic disease**.

这项研究令人注意的是它有助于了解遗传性疾病。

2. Experiments show that daydreaming significantly **contributes to intellectual growth**, powers of concentration, and the ability to interact and communicate with others.

实验显示做白日梦在很大意义上促进了智力的发展、精力的集中以及和他人交往、交流能力的提高。

3. It offers a fuller sense of being intensely alive from moment to moment, and this, of course, **contributes greatly to the excitement and joy of living**.

它常常使我们更充分地意识到生活的紧张激烈,而这当然极大地促进了生活的兴奋与快乐。

**B22. CURB/HAMPER/STUN: curb/hamper/stun the growth/development/advance**

1. And that, in the opinion of a number of family-planning workers, is a

major obstacle to the effort to **curb the rapid growth** of this country's population.

一些计划生育工作者的看法,极大地阻碍了人们控制这个国家人口快速增长的努力。

2. There is none of the hurry which, in our society, often **hampers the full development of a growing personality**. There, a child grows up under the ever-present attention of his parents.

那里不存在我们社会中的这种经常束缚孩子个性成长的压力。在那里孩子是在父母的密切关注下成长的。

**B23. CONFRONT: be confronted with the danger/shortage**

1. The Chinese write the word crisis by combining the symbol for the word danger with the symbol for the word opportunity. In these times of crisis, we **have been confronted with both dangers and opportunities**.

汉语里危机这个词组是把危险和机会这两个字合起来写。在危机的时代,我们面临着的确是危险和机会并存。

2. No necessity of making a living away from home results in neglect of children, and no father **is confronted with his inability** to buy an education for his child.

没有必要离乡背井去谋生以致不能好好照料孩子,父亲也不会无力供孩子上学。

**B24. CONTRARY: contrary to the (wide/common/general) belief/thought/assumption**

1. **Contrary to popular belief**, constant and conscious effort at solving a problem is, in reality, one of the most inefficient ways of coping with it. 与一般人的认为相反,实际上坚持不懈、有意识地去解决问

题,这是一种最不能有效地解决问题的方法之一。

2. **Contrary to a popular assumption**, economy is far from being the only motive for camping.

与人们的想法恰好相反,节约钱不是野营的惟一动机。

**B25. CULTIVATE: cultivate the understanding/  
knowledge/friendship**

1. Many corporations spend a huge amount of money on advertising to **cultivate a knowledge of their goods in the consumers' minds**.

许多大公司在广告上大花血本,以培养消费者对他们的商品的了解意识。

**B26. DESPITE/IN SPITE OF: despite/ in spite of the advance/backwardness/frustration**

1. **In spite of scattered attempts** to change, the typical American academic schedule remains a relic of our past.

尽管不时有力争对变化的尝试,典型的美国学术安排还是过去的遗迹。

2. He persisted in his work **in spite of the general indifference or hostility**.

尽管有人对他不是冷漠就是怀有敌意,他仍然坚持工作。

3. **Despite this backwardness** in the communication—or perhaps because of it—China hopes to leapfrog into the digital era by bypassing many of the costly transitional technologies that industrial nations are now seeking to replace with more advanced digital systems.

尽管中国通讯落后,或者说正是由于这种落后,中国希望跳跃式地进入通讯数字显示时代,一下子越过耗资巨大的过渡技术阶段。这个过渡技术,工业化国家正在寻求用先进的数字显示

系统取而代之。

4. But **despite its banality**, this relentless bickering take its toll on the average parent's mental health.

尽管有些陈词滥调,这种不停的争吵极大地影响了一般家长的精神健康。

**B27. DISPLAY: display the respect/courage/confidence**

1. It is commonplace that a society reveals its reverence or contempt for history by **the respect or disregard that it displays for older people**.

一个社会对历史是尊重还是轻视,往往是通过它对老人的态度是敬重还是漠视显示出来的。

2. As a soldier, he **displayed courage and tactical skill**, but was denied a chance to make a bid for strategic greatness.

作为一名军人,他表现出勇敢善战,但他没有能获得机会表现他的伟大战略才能。

**B28. DUE/OWING/THANKS: due (owing/thanks) to the lack/shortage of**

1. **Due to the lack of** experimental opportunity, the sociologists must compare sets of social facts drawn from different societies.

由于缺少实验室的实验机会,社会学家必须比较从不同社会得到的一些社会事实。

2. We have, therefore, **a shortage of** teachers, **due first to their attraction** into more remunerative fields, and secondly **to** the inadequate status and emphasis given.

因此,我们师资不足的原因首先是由于他们被吸引到报酬更优厚的岗位;其次是教师地位不高,且对他们不够重视。

3. Housing construction had 12% more invested in it in 1996, **not so much owing to** increased demand, **as to fears** of new policies regarding the limitation of building.

对商品房建造的投资在 1996 年增长了 12%，这并不是由于需求的增长，而是由于害怕新的政策对造房的限制。

4. **Thanks to technological progress**, the contemporary advertiser can make use of television to broadcast the image as well as the voice of his client.

多亏了技术的进步，现代广告商可以运用电视来传播他们客户的声音和形象。

**B29. EARN: earn(cost/win) respect/admiration/  
friendship/affection**

1. It was good also to know that he had **earned the respect and friendship** of his neighbors; it was good to feel needed, responsible, and liked.

意识到赢得了他的邻居的尊敬和友谊，他感觉很好；感到别人需要你、又有责任感、受人爱戴，这种感觉也很好。

2. Sensitive people have been mirroring their friends and acquaintances all their lives, and **winning affection and respect** in this way.

敏感的人始终能够在他们的生活中模仿他们的朋友，以此赢得爱戴和尊敬。

3. Now for people who want to **win agreement or trust, affection or sympathy**, some psychologists recommend the deliberate use of this method.

对要想得到赞成、信任、爱戴和同情的人，一些心理学家推荐使用这种方法。

4. He was aware that years of pursuit in this field **cost him too much freedom and personal happiness**, but he never minded.

他意识到由于在这个领域里的多年追求,使他失去了太多的自由和个人的幸福,但是他不在乎。

5. Failure to connect a name and a face can **cost you a pleasant friendship** or a lucrative business opportunity.

见到一个人却记不起他的姓名时可能会使你失去一位融洽的朋友,乃至一个做生意赚大钱的机会。

**B30. ELIMINATE: eliminate the need/foolishness/  
boredom**

1. Electronic brains can reduce the profusion of dead ends involved in vital research. But they can't **eliminate the foolishness and decay** that come from the unexamined life.

电脑能减少重要研究中的许多死胡同,但不能铲除来源于没有考证过的生活中的愚昧和腐败。

2. They believe that **eliminating competition** in sports and in society as a whole would lead to laziness and vice rather than hard work and accomplishment.

他们认为,若在体育乃至整个社会中消灭竞争,就会导致懒惰和邪恶,而不是勤奋和成就。

**B31. ENCOURAGE: encourage participation/  
concentration/development**

1. Strong economic and social currents **encourage the continued concentration** of the urban population which otherwise might disperse into more sparsely settled areas.

经济和社会的良好形势鼓励人们不断向城市流动,否则的话这些人就会分散到人口稀少的居住地。

2. The federal government is strengthening its programs of incentives to

**encourage voluntary sterilization.**

联邦政府正加大奖励计划,鼓励人们自愿节育。

3. The schools were asked to **encourage good citizenship, patriotism, and international understanding.**

人们要求学校促进培养良好的公民意识、爱国主义精神和对国际事务的了解。

**B32. DIMINISH: diminish the pressure/intensity/friction**

1. I found this very profitable in **diminishing the intensity** of insular prejudice.

我发现这对于减少狭隘偏见很有好处。

2. Consider what might be done if the money at present spent on armaments were spent on increasing the food supply of the world and **diminishing the population pressure.**

考虑一下,如果把现在花在军备上的钱用在增加世界粮食和减少人口的压力上,将会怎样。

**B33. END: end in dissatisfaction/failure**

1. The ungoverned imagination cannot escape "the futility of an endless pursuit" that **ends finally in weariness and disillusionment.**

任你怎么想像,也不能逃脱无止境追求的无效性,而这种追求最后导致的是疲倦和幻灭。

**B34. ENHANCE: enhance the beauty/productivity**

1. I think lawyers mistakenly believe complex language **enhances the mystique of the law.**

我认为律师们有一个错误的想法,即复杂的语言能增加法律的深奥性。



2. The horticulture industry and related industries play an important role in preserving and **enhancing the beauty and productivity** of the environment.

园艺业及其相关产业在保护和美化环境及提高生产力方面起着重要作用。

3. For the emerging company, the association with a corporate partner may not only enhance the emerging company's balance sheet, but may **enhance its credibility** with customers, suppliers, investors and others, as well as create opportunities for the emerging company to leverage off of the corporate partner's marketing and distribution network or administrative service.

对于新兴公司而言,与大公司合伙人联合,不仅可以使公司的资产负债表大为改观,而且还可以提高客户、供应商、投资者和其他人对公司的信任度。

**B35. ENJOY: enjoy the protection/support/assistance/popularity/approval of/the triumph in; enjoy great prestige/autonomy/credibility/access/warmth; enjoy an increase/growth/surge in/ enjoy prosperity/affluence/considerable influence/attention**

1. Opinion polls still show that Mr. Bush **enjoys wide popularity**, but experts are saying he needs television exposure as deposit against a rainy day.

民意测验显示布什先生仍然得到了广泛的支持,但有专家说,他需要在电视上多抛头露面,积累形象资本,以防风云不测。

2. The nationalities question is perhaps a lesser danger. Only certain regions are affected, and the government has **enjoyed considerable flexibility** in responding.

民族问题也许不那么危险,只影响到几个地区,而且政府对此具有相当的应变能力。

3. The Prime Minister referred to the seven and a half million Britons expected to visit Spain this year, saying that the vast majority came to **enjoy its hospitality and climate.**

总理谈到今年将有 750 万英国人来西班牙旅游。他说大多数人来为的是领受西班牙人的好客和宜人的气候。

4. That is only half of their story; if they were so dreary I wouldn't so thoroughly enjoy their company.

这只是他们的一半情况。如果他们是如此的厌烦,我不会和他们一起作伴。

5. The cause of "armed struggle" to end apartheid has **enjoyed constant attention.**

以武装斗争来结束(南非)种族隔离制度这项事业一直为人们所关注。

**B36. ENSURE: ensure the growth/survival/acceptability**

1. The executives admitted that a college degree did not of itself **ensure motivation** or the verbal or social skills needed.

行政管理人员承认,大学学位本身并不能确保大学毕业生的积极性或所需要的文字或社会技能。

2. They would be released from the pressures of **ensuring economic survival** through a practical curriculum.

他们面临着学习实用课程从而确保经济生存的压力现在他们可以从这一压力下解脱出来了。

3. To **insure the widest acceptability** or greatest potential profitability, the plot lines follow the most commonly accepted notions of morality and justice.

为了确保被最多数的人所接受,或获得最大的潜在利润,情节构思要根据最能接受的对道德和公正的看法着手。

**B37. ERODE: erode ability/reputation/popularity of**

1. Rising consumer price inflation in Hongkong may also **erode Hongkong's ability** to compete against other newly-industrialized economies of East and Southeast Asia.

香港不断上升的通货膨胀也可能削弱它与东亚和东南亚新兴工业国和地区的竞争力。

2. But new studies appear to have **eroded much of the pessimism** that has long surrounded vaccine-development efforts.

然而,最近的一些研究成果似乎已使人们从笼罩在疫苗实验所致的悲观情绪中走了出来。

3. Discipline is breaking down, morale is sagging and **loyalty is eroding**.

军纪松懈、士气低落、军人为国效忠的责任感日渐淡薄。

**B38. ESCAPE: escape (be released) from boredom/pressure; escape one's memory/sence**

1. In vain they rush frantically round from place to place, trying to **escape from avenging boredom** by mere clatter and motion.

他们拼命地从一个地方跑到另一个地方,试图以喧闹和运动来摆脱要命的厌烦,但最终还是徒劳的。

2. He, the individual, feels so small before these giants that he sees only one way to **escape the sense of utter insignificance**. (《研究生英语阅读》)

他作为个人在这些庞大的机器前面感到如此渺小,他发现只有一个方法逃脱那种无足轻重感。

3. He labored long hours and was the soul of honesty—he could not **escape his honesty**.

他起早摸黑地干活,他是诚实的化身。凡事他皆开心见诚,无所隐饰。

**B39. EXHIBIT: exhibit courage**

1. And whereas a country like Britain **exhibits considerable variation** in climate and landscape, the differences across the continental U.S. are extreme.

像英国这样的国家,其气候和地貌显示的因地而异,对横跨北美大陆的美国来说有天壤之别。

**B40. EXPERIENCE/UNDERGO: experience/undergo  
a rise/decrease/decline surge in**

1. Despite this, many central city areas have **experienced a decrease in population** since the mid-1960s, as suburbs grew.

尽管如此,从20世纪60年代中期,随着郊区的发展,许多中心城区的人口都在下降。

2. The consequence is that all the larger American cities have **experienced an increase** of relatively unskilled, poor people for whom jobs are not readily available.

其结果是:美国所有大城市里没有技术又贫穷的人口在增加,而这些城市又无法提供给他们工作。

3. Everyone has setbacks in life; everyone **experiences occasional losses or threats**.

每个人生活中都有挫折,每个人都会经历时不时的失落或威胁。

**B41. EXPRESS: express dissatisfaction/disapproval**

1. Most people not directly engaged in daily work **express disapproval** when they hear of people working on and off.

许多不直接涉及每日工作的人,当他们听到人们的工作是断断续续的就表示不满。

**B42. FACE: face the threat/resistance/pressure; in the face of danger/difficulty/threat/opposition/criticism**

1. In the developed world, and in particular the European Union; globalisation is **facing widespread public resistance**.

在发达国家里,尤其是在欧盟里,全球化政策正面临公众的普遍抵制。

2. An adult who distinguishes himself at a first job by lucky accident **faces probable disappointment** when real challenges arise.

一个由于偶然的会使自己在第一份工作中就脱颖而出的人,往往当真正挑战来临时就可能面临失望。

3. **Even in the face of national and international adversity**, he does not see himself as totally powerless. He does what he can to make the world a better place.

甚至面对国内国际的恶劣环境,他也并不认为自己毫无能力,他尽力去使世界变得更美好。

4. He pressed the case for a mechanized army with unrelenting courage **in the face of incomprehension or hostility**.

他不顾别人的不理解或敌视的态度,以坚忍不拔的勇气坚持建立机械化部队。

**B43. FACILITATE: facilitate the transportation/settlement**

1. Technology has **facilitated the sharing of** information and the storage and delivery of information, thus making more information available to

more people.

技术促进了信息的分享、储存和传递,从而使更多的人能获得更多的信息。

**B44. FIND: find a welcome/acceptance/popularity/  
favor/application**

1. Yet when they studied the various sleep stages, they **found no correlation between** sleep physiology and the unhappy mood.

但是当他们研究不同的睡眠阶段时,他们并没有发现睡眠生理学与人的不愉快情绪有什么联系。

2. Both broke away from the use of orthodox psychoanalysis; both **found their greatest popularity and acceptance** in the United States.

双方都和正统的心理分析决裂,都被美国普遍接受和欢迎。

**B45. FORCE: force the retirement/withdrawal**

1. The intent of neither the public nor the educators had changed, but immediate realities sometimes **forced the dilution of college-preparatory courses**.

公众和教育工作者的目的都没有变,但眼前的现实有时迫使大学预备课程必须要削减。

2. High personages were implicated, and the long crisis that followed this discovery **forced the resignation** of the President and his government.

此事牵涉到许多高层人员,事情败露后出现的长期危机使总统及其政府官员不得不辞去职务。

**B46. FOSTER: foster the growth/an interest**

1. It may **foster the illusion** that he is asking fundamental questions when actually he is asking only functional ones.

它可能会造成这样一种幻觉,即他是在提一个根本性的问题,而实际上他问的只是实用方面的问题。

2. Over the past two decades, venture capital has **fostered the growth** of many of the world's leading high technology and other emerging growth companies in the United States.

在过去的 20 年中,风险资本促进了美国许多处于世界领先地位的高技术公司和其他新兴公司的发展。

**B47. FREE: be free from the pressure/want**

1. It would be pleasant to **envisage a world free from the pressure of material want**.

想像一个没有因物质需要所造成的压力的世界是多么美好。

2. The technology **freed the picture-object from** its confinement to two dimensions.

一项技术能使拍摄的物体不再局限于二维空间。

3. But most of us, especially when the experience is new, require an environment **free from outside distraction**.

但是我们中的大多数,特别是在经验不足时,更需要一个没有外界干扰的环境。

4. In the new world, with its opportunities for widespread landholding, there was the chance for a flowering of authentic freedom, with each citizen, **freed from economic dependence**, both able and eager to participate in charting the course of his own future.

新的世界充满了能够获得土地的机会,因此有机会获得真正的个人自由,每个人由于在经济上不需要依靠他人,既能够也渴望描绘自己的未来。

**B48. FUEL: fuel the growing criticism of/confusion about /discontent/anxiety**

1. We are being rudely disabused of our vision of the future. The result is a deep crisis of spirit that **fuels American's growing self-doubts, cynicism with politics and confusion** about our global role.

我们对未来的憧憬被一下子打消了。随之而来的是一场深刻的精神危机。这一危机导致了美国对自己越来越不自信,对政治越来越悲观怀疑,对美国在世界上所扮演的角色也越来越困惑不解。

2. Slow growth and rising unemployment are **fueling social discontent** across the developed work.

经济增长缓慢,失业人数不断增加,使发达国家社会中的不满情绪日益蔓延。

3. The economic reforms of recent years have also **fueled a get-rich-at-any-price mentality**.

这几年的经济改革也诱发了一种“为了致富而不顾一切”的心态。

**B49. GIVEN: Given the difficulty/complexity of**

1. **Given the diversity and complexity of** our industry, however, no modification could be uniformly appropriate. (《研究生基础英语 II》)

由于到我们工业的多样性和复杂性,因而可以说,没有一种修正对大家都是合适的。

2. Attitudes towards marriage were bound to change, given the shifting social values.

鉴于社会价值观念的变化,人们对婚姻的态度也必然会改变。



**B50. INCREASE: increase the efficiency/determination/  
flexibility/knowledge**

1. But modernization may well have **increased the degree and pervasiveness** of conflict between young people and their parents for other reasons.

但是,现代化很可能会加剧年轻人及其家长之间为某些原因而冲突的程度和范围。

2. Engineering and accounting and computer science afford students better job opportunities and **increased flexibility** in career choice.

工程、会计和计算机学科为学生提供了更好的工作机会,增加了他们职业选择的灵活性。

3. Although groups often may **increase the motivation** of their members to deal with problems there is a counter-balancing need to contend with conflicts arising among members of a group and to give it coherent directions.

虽然团队常常能提高内部成员处理问题的积极性,但也要有一种平衡力才能与成员中出现的矛盾做斗争,给予集体以凝聚力。

4. In the west world, many people agree that participation in religious rites and church activities functions to **increase social solidarity**.

在西方国家,许多人认为,参加宗教仪式和教堂活动起到了增加社会凝聚力的作用。

**B51. JUSTIFY: justify the violation/investment/cost/  
incompetence/decision/desire to/for**

1. Poverty does not **justify** torture, tyranny or economic incompetence.

国家贫困不能成为滥施酷刑、暴政统治的理由,也不能为无力进行经济建设开脱责任。

2. The present position and potentialities of this region **justify optimism**.  
该地区当前所处的地位极有发展前景,有理由使人对它抱乐观态度。

3. So do random urine tests to detect drug or alcohol use—**extreme invasions of privacy that can perhaps be justified for** professional athletes or H-bomb button-pushers, but for few others.

同样,为查出吸毒或饮用酒精而对人尿做抽样检测,也有损人格,是对人的隐私权极严重的侵犯。对职业运动员,或对掌握氢弹按钮的人进行这种尿检也许还说得过去,但对其他人几乎没有理由这么做。

4. The idea that explaining one's motivation **justifies any violation**, is perhaps essential in a world of flying insults.

解释自己的动机就能为违反礼貌准则找到理由,可能是这个脏话满天飞的世界根本性问题。

**B52. LEAD: lead to the understanding/knowledge/contribution of**

1. At last our understanding of the molecules that control heredity appears to be **leading to an alleviation of** human illness. (《研究生英语阅读》)

我们最终对那些控制遗传性分子的了解,似乎能引导我们去减轻人类的疾病。

2. Eventually the discovery of this gene will **lead to an understanding of** the precise cause of manic depression. (《研究生英语阅读》)

发现这种基因必然会引导我们了解人们心情压抑的准确成因。

**B53. MINIMIZE: minimize the seriousness/risk/gravity**

1. If he asks, should the doctors deny that he is ill, or **minimize the gravity of the prognosis**?

要是他问起检查结果,医生该不该否认他得了病,该不该将病情的严重性缩小到最低程度?

**B54. OFFSET: offset the loss/damage/liability**

1. The dowry system, for example, often compels a couple with two or three daughters to keep trying for sons to **offset the economic liability** they will face when their daughters marry.

比如嫁妆制度往往使一对有两三个女儿的夫妻不断尝试生儿子,这样可以弥补他们女儿结婚时带来的经济损失。

**B55. OWE/ATTRIBUTE: owe/attribute to the lack/inability/adoption of**

1. And what an uncomfortable realization it is that the West **owes its very ability to eat today to the adoption** of Chinese inventions two centuries ago.

西方人今天吃饭的能力得归功于两个世纪前所采用的中国发明,这种意识真让人感到不舒服。

2. In contrast, those who have been led to expect failure will **attribute their failures to lack of ability** rather than inadequate effort.

相反,那些认为自己会失败的人会把他们的失败归因于缺乏能力而不是努力不够。

3. And many social critics attribute the high crime rate in the US at least partially **to a lack of discipline** in the schools.

许多社会批评家把美国的高犯罪率至少部分归咎于学校缺少严格的纪律。

**B56. PREVENT: prevent the use/solution/pollution of**

1. The young realized the critical need for world action to **prevent further pollution of** the environment, hunger and nuclear war.

年轻人意识到世界有必要采取行动防止进一步的环境污染、饥饿和核武器战争。

2. If they are rich and the article is defamatory, they can sue for libel. Most cannot afford to do so, and even the rich cannot **prevent an invasion of their privacy**.

若是有钱人家,加上文章又的确是恶意中伤,那么他们可以诽谤罪向法院起诉。但大多数受害人是打不起这种官司的,即使有钱人也不能使自己的隐私免受侵犯。

**B57. PROJECT: project firmness/kindness/  
disappointment onto**

1. He has to be able to **project firmness**—no physical clumsiness (like Ford), no rapid eye movement (like Carter).

他必须表现出他的坚定性,不能(像福特那样)动作迟缓,也不能(像卡特那样)目光移动不定。

2. In the intimacy of the home it is easy to **project disappointment or frustration or anger onto** the nearest person, and that person is often a husband or wife.

在关系亲密的家庭中,很容易把自己的失望、受挫或气愤倾诉给自己最亲的人,比如丈夫或妻子。

**B58. PROMOTE: promote the growth/use of**

1. It is an organization that **promotes the use of alternative methods of** research which do not make animals suffer.

这个组织推行使用其他研究方法,以避免动物受苦。

2. The media, including music, books, films and television **promote not**

only teenage sexuality but also the wearing of adult clothes and the use of adult behaviors and language.

媒介,包括音乐、书籍、电影和电视不仅增强了青少年的性活动,而且也促使他们穿大人的服装,模仿大人的行为和语言。

**B59. PROVE: prove a failure/digression**

1. The thinking behind legalization is simple. The annual multi-billion-dollar war against drugs has **proved a disastrous failure**.

产生想让毒品合法化的想法不难理解。政府每年都要为查禁毒品耗资几十亿美元,结果证明是完全失败。

**B60. PROVIDE: provide a solution to/escape from**

1. Thus, the following are possible uses of television watching, a popular leisure activity: a change of experience to **provide "escape" from** the stress and strain of work...

这样,就有可能以看电视(一项流行的休闲活动),作为一条途径:交流如何从工作压力和紧张中“解脱”出来的经验……

2. Science may eventually **provide a technical solution** to the problem of happiness.

科学或许最终能够从技术上解决幸福问题。

3. Jobs and work do much more than most of us realize to **provide happiness and contentment**.

工作在使人得到幸福与满足方面所起的作用比我们大多数人意识到的要多得多。

**B61. REDUCE: reduce the support/participation/  
boredom/pressure**

1. These measures have affected ordinary people and **reduced public**

**support.**

这些措施影响了普通大众,削弱了公众的支持。

2. It has exposed cities to fiscal and financial pressure to **reduce the volatility** and inflationary tendencies of housing and property markets.  
这使得城市面临财政和金融上的压力,即减弱来自房地产市场方面的多变性和通货膨胀的趋向。
3. It was believed that habitual daydreaming would eventually distance people from society and **reduce their effectiveness** in coping with real problems.  
人们相信习惯性地做白日梦最终会使人们与社会拉开距离,并减弱他们处理实际问题的效率。

**B62. REQUIRE: require patience/determination/perseverance/love/ respect/dedication/attention/devotion**

1. Dictionary making does not **require brilliance or originality** of mind.  
It does **require high intelligence**, mastery of the craft, and dedication to hard work, enjoy the closeness to nature.  
编纂词典并不需要编者有横溢的才华或独创的思维,但却要求其有很高的悟性,精于此行,并能辛勤劳作,乐此不疲。
2. To watch baseball **requires identification** with the home team; to watch football **requires only a need** for action or a week of few thrills. (《研究生英语阅读》)  
观看垒球需要支持主队,观看橄榄球只需要行动或一周的激动。
3. The law **required the replacement** of all wooden cars by steel cars.  
法律要求全部木制车辆都要用钢制车辆加以替换。
4. This was a total war which **required the planned coordination and exploitation** of each nation's entire resources.

这是一场总体战,它要求每个国家都有计划地协调开发其全部资源。

**B63. RESIST: resist the analysis/explanation/attempt/temptation**

1. Over the years, the great majority of men have successfully **resisted all attempts** to make them change their style of dress. The same cannot be said for women.

多年来,大多数男人成功地抵制了欲改变他们服装款式的一切企图。而就这方面,我们不能说妇女也做到了。

2. It takes the most cool-headed and good-tempered of drivers to **resist the temptation** to revenge when subjected to uncivilized behavior.

当遭遇到不文明的行为时,只有保持最冷静的头脑、温和的性情,驾驶员才能抵制住报复的引诱。

**B64. RESPONSIBLE: be responsible for misunderstanding/contribution**

1. I believe that the scientists are themselves **responsible for a general misunderstanding** of what they are really up to.

人们对科学家要真正达到什么标准有一种普遍的误解,我认为科学家要对此负责。

2. These **are the robots responsible for the reduction** in job-related injuries in this new industry.

这些机器人可以减少这一新型工业中与工作有关的伤害。

3. Tourism **has also been greatly responsible for the rapid development** of some developing nations.

旅游业对一些第三世界国家的迅速发展也起了很大的作用。

4. Management spokesmen, on the other hand, say that they don't want

to be responsible for the possible impairment of a child and that they will fight to comply with the health and safety standard which have been recommended for the protection of women.

另一方面,管理层的发言人说,他们不想对孩子可能造成的损伤负责,但他们将努力遵守被推荐来保护妇女健康和安全的准则。

**B65. RESULT: result in failure/breakdown**

1. This helped bring about the fall of Rome through her unnatural emulation of masculine qualities, which **resulted in a large-scale breakdown** of the family and ultimately of the empire.

这就促使了罗马的垮台,这是由于其不自然地模仿男性气质的结果。罗马的垮台导致了家庭乃至整个帝国大规模的崩溃。

**B66. RID: rid of/get rid of prejudice**

1. A good way of **ridding yourself of** certain kinds of dogmatism is to become aware of opinions held in social circles different from your own.

摆脱某些武断看法的(一个)好办法是:了解一下在不同于你的社会圈子里人们所持的见解。

You should **get rid of** your foolhardiness.

你必须改掉你那种蛮干作风。

**B67. RISK: risk failure/loss/boredom**

1. If you are passive, merely allowing yourself to be acted upon without any involvement in the day-to-day activities of your community, **you risk boredom and dullness.**

如果你是被动的,只是等人家来邀请你,自己却不积极参加你社区的日常活动,那你就可能感到无聊和乏味。



**B68. SHOW: show the indifference/reluctance/interest**

1. These networks are on the alert for warning signs that **show the weakening of** rock layers that can precede an earthquake.

这些网络一直处于戒备状态,搜索着告警的迹象,这些迹象显示出在地震前可能发生的岩层松动的状况。

In this way families can express their gratefulness and **show respect for** the elderly.

通过这种方式,家里人可以向老人表达感激之情,并表示对他们的尊敬。

**B69. STAND: stand up to close scrutiny/intensive publicity/examination**

1. The notion that the defining characteristic of religion is a belief in the supernatural does not, he found, **stand up to examination**.

他认为,把宗教的释义特点看成是超自然的想法是经不起检验的。

2. Most children have such a high ideal of their parents, unless the parents themselves have been unsatisfactory, that it can hardly hope to **stand up to a realistic evaluation**.

除非父母本身有难以令人满意之处,大多数孩子对他们的父母都怀有崇高的期望,这种期望如此崇高以致很难指望它能经得起实事求是的评价。

3. **The notion** that the defining characteristic of religion is a belief in the supernatural **does not stand up to examination**. Some religions do not hold this belief.

把宗教的特点释义为是对超自然的一种信仰,这种说法并不一定经得起推敲。某些宗教并没有这种信仰。

**B70. STIMULATE/FUEL/ENHANCE: stimulate/fuel/  
enhance the growth/development**

1. Thirdly, by refusing to take refuge in panic-stricken stop-gap measures, we **stimulated the return of international confidence**.

第三,我们拒绝采取惊惶失措的权宜之计,促进了国际信心的恢复。

2. During the campaign, she predicted that the tax cut would help **fuel job growth** of 450 000 over four years.

在竞选中她预言:减税政策将有助于刺激就业,在未来的4年中增加45万个工作机会。

3. Electrical energy storage would also **enhance development of the electrical automobile** which could take care of 92 percent of the non-commercial driving.

电能的储藏还可推动电车的发展,而92%的非商业行驶是用电车的。

**B71. SUBJECT: subjected to a critical examination/a  
sharp criticism/investigation/ a close scrutiny/ a careful  
analysis**

1. Again, the common-sense assumption that crime and deviance are social evils and disruptive of community will be shown false **when subjected to dispassionate examination**.

另外,犯罪和举止异常是社会罪恶,会扰乱社区,这看起来是一般常识,但当给予冷静的分析时就会发现这是错的。

2. This one advantage is that the method **is not subject to the same limitations** of time and space.

这样做的一个优点是不会受时间和空间的限制。

3. The whole area of national and local government was **subjected to a most searching financial scrutiny**.

国家和地方政府的各个部门都置于最严格的财政监督之中。

4. The male himself perceives now that he is losing his advantages and that more aspects of his social roles **are subject to public challenge** than in the past.

现代男人们自己感觉到他们正在失去优势,较之过去,他们的社会角色日趋受到社会的挑战。

**B72. SUFFER: suffer negative publicity/a political humiliation/discrimination/injustice/the loss of stature/rising unemployment/suffer a sharp decline in**

1. No one can deny that we seem to **be suffering from creeping shrinkage** of vision.

没有人能够否认我们的观察力似乎正在慢慢减弱。

2. There is a growing body of evidence to support the fact that most people **suffer from a lack of daydreaming** rather than an excess of it.

越来越多的资料证明这样一个事实:绝大多数人白日梦做得太少,而不是过多。

3. Most of the idle rich **suffer unspeakable boredom** as the price of their freedom from drudgery.

大多数富人无所事事,受说不出口的无聊之罪,作为他们可以无需干苦活的代价。

**B73. SURVIVE: survive the criticism/attack/disapproval of**

1. Eight years ago they (a black woman and a white man) were married.

They have **survived their families' shock and disapproval** and the

stares and unwelcome comments of strangers.

这对黑白人夫妇是8年前结婚的。对此,双方的家庭都曾十分震惊,而且都不赞成这桩婚事。不相识的人总以惊异的眼光打量他俩,还说些很不悦耳的话。所有这一切他俩都挺过来了。

2. Yet the teaching profession has **survived the invention of books**. It should welcome the development of the electronic tutor.

然而,教书这个职业并没有因书的出现而消失。当然我们应该欢迎电子教师的出现。

**B74. SYMBOLIZE: symbolize the liberation of**

1. It **includes rituals symbolizing the separation of** the young person from his or her family.

这包括这些象征年轻人与他们的家庭分开的礼节。

**B75. TAX: tax the ability/ingenuity**

1. The situation **taxes the ingenuity** of the party's reform-minded leaders.

这种形势使得党内具有改革思想的领导人为了之绞尽脑汁。

**B76. THERE: There is realization/recognition/  
demand/concern/shift/agreement**

1. Since private industry and even government department tend to concentrate on immediate results and show comparatively little interest in long-range investigations, where **there is a steady shift** of scientists from the pure to the applied field.

由于私人工业甚至政府部门都愿意有快速的效益,因此对长期的研究相对兴趣少一些,这样就出现了科学家从纯科学领域向应用科学领域的流动。

2. **There's a tendency** to think that they are endowed with something super-normal.

人们往往习惯于这样的思考:他们天生就具有超凡的能力。

3. As you can imagine, especially in a prison where **there was heavy emphasis on rehabilitation**, an inmate was smiled upon if he demonstrated an unusually intense interest in books.

正如你可以想像的,尤其在一个特别强调改造的监狱里,如果一个犯人表现出对书籍异乎寻常的强烈兴趣,他就会受到赞许。

4. Although experts have developed disposal technology, **there are no guarantees that** nuclear waste will never pollute the environment.

虽然专家们已经研制出处理技术,但并不能保证核废料再也不会污染环境了。

5. **There is an ever increasing optimism about** the future of economic growth and social stability.

人们对未来的经济增长和社会稳定越来越乐观。

6. **There is one grave concern** about the problem of prejudice in our complicated social system. For it remains as one of the important factors that contribute to racist behavior.

人们对我们复杂的社会制度中出现的偏见问题表现出深切的关心。因为它仍是造成种族歧视的一个重要因素。

7. More children are dropping out to hunt for jobs in big cities. They work long hours for little pay, and **there is no public concern for** their safety or welfare.

许多孩子正退学到大城市去找工作。他们工作时间很长却得到很少的钱。公众对他们的安全和福利也不大关心。

**B77. UNDERGO: undergo great change/development**

1. Like language, manners continually **undergo slow changes and adaptations**, but these changes have to be global, not atomic.

就像语言一样,礼仪继续在经历缓慢的变化和适应过程,而这些变化必须是全球性的,而不是很小局部的。

2. The idea that technology bends American institutions and culture to meet the needs of innovation and machine production has its origins in the nineteenth century thought in Western societies that **were undergoing rapid industrialization** at the time.

技术要让美国的制度和文​​化适应革新和机器生产的需要,这种观点源于 19 世纪西方社会的思想。当时西方社会正经历飞速的工业发展。

**B78. UNDERMINE: undermine attempts/confidence/friendship/strength/authority/health**

1. Individualism has **undermined the traditional beliefs** that once formed our character and defined our creed.

强调个人主义,削弱了曾经形成我们性格、确定我们信仰的传统观念。

2. All such developments—the new economic problems, the new environmental problems—are converging to **undermine the position** of the nation-state in the world.

所有这些新情况,如新的经济问题、新的环境问题都削弱了国家在世界上的地位。

**B79. VALUE: value independence/openness**

1. Many other cultures, however, **do not value openness and directness** highly.

然而,许多其他文化,并不十分重视坦率和直接。

### B80. With the development/advance/invention

1. Today the great majority of pupils in the United States live in big cities **with such density** that there can easily be three or four elementary schools—as well as secondary schools within each child's walking or bicycling distance.

当今在美国,绝大多数的学生住在人口稠密的大城市里,在每个孩子的步行或骑车的路程内,就可以有三到四个小学,以及中学。

2. Many routine tasks can be performed **with distraction** in the background with little or no adverse effect on output.

许多日常任务可以在周围注意力分散的情况下完成,而且对完成结果很少有影响。

3. It means having to pass theatres and swimming pools **with no thought of** ever entering them, because they are set for black people.

这意味着在走过剧院和游泳池时连想都不用想有进入的机会,因为它们是专供白人使用的。

4. Such books we read **with resignation** rather than **with alacrity**.

我们读这样的书感觉并不轻松愉快,而是无可奈何。

5. **With the invention of writing**, a great advance was made, for knowledge could then be not only communicated but also stored.

随着文字的发明,社会取得了很大的进步,因为知识不仅可以用来交流,而且还可以储存起来。

6. **With the development of modern warfare**, there are few, if any, important combat activities that only men can do. Women are much better educated than before.

随着现代战争的发展,很少(如果有)有什么重要的战斗只有男的可以参加了。妇女比以前受到了更好的教育。

### B81. Without the use/consideration of

1. It is discovered that men and women with firm bonds of family, friends and church has less than half the mortality rate of those **without the comfort and balance of such ties**.

人们发现,那些与家庭关系、朋友关系以及教堂关系密切的人,要比没有这些关系所带来的舒适和平衡的人的寿命长近一半。

2. When people's standards of living are raised, and health care improves, their birth rate declines **without compulsion or government pressure**.

当人民的生活水平得到了提高,医疗保健有了改善,就不需要强制或政府的压力,他们的孩子出生率自然会降下来。

### 4.3 常用抽象名词的表达

#### C1. ABSENCE: (with /there is) the absence of attempt/work

1. Many medical experts are now agreed that **with the general absence of roughage**, modern citizens are literally—via heart attacks and cancer—eating and drinking themselves into the grave.

许多医学专家现在一致认为,由于食物中总体缺少粗粮,现代公民们就是这样一日三餐,不知不觉地患上了心脏病和癌症,最终送命,这样说并非言过其实。

2. There seems to have been **an absence of attempt** at conciliation between rival sects. (Spectator)

似乎没有进行任何尝试去调解对立派之间的矛盾。

3. In part it consists of a level tone showing assurance, **a lack of verbal impatience, an absence** of negative qualities such as irony, put



downs, and irritation.

它的一部分是由显示信心的声调,没有言语上的不耐烦,没有讽刺、贬低和恼怒等消极因素所组成的。

4. For large numbers of people, **the absence of work** is harmful to their health.

对大多数人来说,没有工作对他们的身体反而有害。

**C2. ACCEPTANCE: have/find/obtain/gain/win (general/immediate/wide) acceptance for/among/of**

1. Academic dishonesty has had relatively strong peer support and **acceptance** among some students, partly because we did not make a serious effort to explain why such behavior is contemptible.

学习上的作弊得到同伴相对有力的支持,也被一些学生所接受。部分原因是我们没有真正努力去解释为什么这种行为是可耻的。

2. It teaches the role of victim, and **the acceptance of violence** as a social reality we must learn to live with.

它让我们懂得牺牲的作用,接受暴力作为一个社会现实,我们必须学会与其相处。

3. If that can be done, the highway will serve the purposes users want. Then it will **gain broad acceptance** and become a reality.

如果做到这一点的话,高架就会达到使用者所希望的目的。这样就会得到广泛的支持而成为现实。

**C3. ACCESS: gain/get/have/attain/give (ready/easy) access to**

1. Advances in technology **have smoothed access to** information, rendering superfluous whole layers of management.

技术的发展使我们能较容易获取信息,也使整个管理层变得有些多余。

2. **Easy and convenient access to facts** can produce unlimited good only if it is matched by **the desire and ability** to find out what they mean and where they would lead.

容易又方便地获得材料能产生无限的价值,但只有同时又有愿望和能力去发现这些事实意味着什么,会导致什么。

3. While it is true that U. S. sources may **have better access to** the information, they might also have more reason to conceal or alter that information.

美国新闻机构获取情报或许较为方便,但它们也可能有较多的理由去隐瞒或篡改情报。

**C4. ACQUISITION: acquisition of knowledge/  
a language/information**

1. Newspaper reading, rather than being simply **the acquisition of** new information, is a kind of passive participation in the life of the national community.

读报不仅仅是获得新的信息,而是一种被动地参与国家生活的活动。

2. But in the past trying to **accelerate children's acquisition** of academic skills in their early age was seen as evidence of bad parenting.  
但在过去,若家长们在孩子还很小时就加快对他们的文化知识的学习,这种做法被认为是不好的教育法。

**C5. AGREEMENT: there is general agreement that**

1. There is total **agreement** that the activity of humans is at least partly responsible for the problem.

有一点大家的意见是一致的:人类的活动对这个问题至少应当负部分责任。

2. To **come to agreement** on control and reduction of weapons between the superpowers is difficult.

超级大国之间要在控制和削减武器方面达成一致意见是很困难的。

**C6. ANALYSIS: make a careful/close analysis  
of; attempt/defy/resist analysis**

1. Yet **close analysis** of such people often reveals the existence of what might be called "stability zones" in their lives.

仔细分析这些人,往往会发现,在他们生活中也存在可能称为的“稳定区域”。

2. It requires a very unusual mind, Whitehead said, to undertake **the analysis** of a fact.

怀特黑德说过,需要一种极不寻常的头脑去分析一个事件。

**C7. ANTICIPATION: in anticipation of a rise/fall/success**

1. All experience a good deal of anticipation, but **the anticipation** pales next to the excitement of first communicating verbally.

所有这一切都经历了许多的盼望,但这种盼望比起第一次语言交流的兴奋要逊色多了。

**C8. ANTIDOTE: as an (strong/powerful) antidote to  
boredom**

1. He supported, for example, universal education as **an antidote** to the numbing effects of economic specialization.

例如他支持全民教育可以克服经济专业化带来的麻木的影响。

**C9. ANTIPATHY: have arouse/provoke/natural antipathy to/towards**

1. Without question, however, the first major thinker to **express a clear antipathy** to the urban way of life was Thomas Jefferson. (The City)  
毫无问题,第一个表示出对城市生活反感的大思想家是托马斯·杰佛逊。

**C10. APATHY: show/have/with an (political/election) apathy toward sth.**

1. Yet despite self-congratulatory rhetoric about being “the envy of the world,” a disheartening proportion of higher education get failing grades when it comes to dealing with that **apathy toward learning**.  
然而,尽管自吹自擂自己“为世人所羡慕”,令人沮丧的是:在对待学习漠不关心这个问题上,高等教育很大一部分只能得不及格的分数。
2. How can we **curb this growing student apathy** and assure ourselves of capable, responsible leadership for the future?  
如何才能制止学生中日益发展的冷漠态度,以确保我们在将来成为有能力、有责任的领导人?

**C11. APPEAL: make a direct/strong appeal to**

1. **The appeal to venture capitalists of investing in United States high technology companies** is quite obvious.  
对风险资本家来说,投资于美国高技术公司的吸引力是显而易见的。

**C12. APPETITE have/stimulate a strong/keen appetite for**

1. The long hours in the office or the factory bring with them as their re-

ward, not only the means of sustenance, but a **keen appetite for pleasure** even in its simplest and most modest forms.

在办公室或工厂里长时间的工作,给他们带来的报酬不仅仅是生活给养,而且是对乐趣的强烈追求,即使是最简单、最朴实的乐趣。

### C13. APPLICATION: the application of knowledge/theory

1. The first aspect of science is **the application of** the machines, products and systems of applied knowledge that scientists and technologists develop.

科学的首要方面是运用科学家和技术人员所研制出来的机器、产品和应用知识体系。

2. In general, **the application—or misapplication—**of science and technology in all fields is certain to affect the structure of society as a whole.

总的说来,科学技术在各个领域中的应用或误用,必然会影响整个社会的结构。

3. We are dealing with **the application of** psychology to advertising and political propaganda.

我们说的是把心理学应用于广告和政治宣传。

### C14. APPRECIATION: cultivate/deepen/express/ show an (better/keen) appreciation of

1. **An appreciation of** what is happening in science today, and how great a distance lies ahead for exploring, ought to be one of the rewards of a liberal arts education.

对今天科学发展的了解,对探索世界还有多长路要走,这应当成为学习人文科学的一种有意义的事。

2. **Their appreciation of** the performance was expressed in loud cheers.  
从他们的高声欢呼中,我们可以看出他们非常欣赏这场演出的。

**C15. ASSESSMENT: make an assessment of**

1. Although it is, of course, much more difficult, he can also **make a subjective assessment of** the percentage of his emotional energy invested in the job.

虽然这很困难,但是他还能对在这份工作中投入多少精力作一个主观的评价。

2. The other thing we have to notice is that the **assessment of** the intelligence of any subject is essentially a comparative affair.

我们必须注意的另一件事是,对智力评估实质上是相对的。

**C16. ASSOCIATION: be/have an association with**

1. Who knows, **the free association of** ideas and images might lead to the rediscovery of poetry.

有谁知道,自由想像和幻想或许能重新发掘诗歌。

2. They suggest the answer may be the lack of **association with** other humans during the period of sleep.

他们暗示这个回答或许和睡眠中缺少与其他人的联系有关。

**C17. ATTACK: come under(personal/sharp) attack**

1. While Soviet officials discount this problem, a Soviet woman journalist wrote in a literary magazine that the whole child care system was **coming under attack** for substandard care. (Developing Reading Skill)

虽然苏联官员对这个问题轻描淡写,但一位苏联女记者在一本文学杂志上写文章指出整个托儿制度未达标准而受到批评。

2. Today, American colleges and universities originally modeled on German ones are under strong attack.

今天美国大学(最初是按照德国大学模式)正受到社会的激烈批评。

**C18. ATTAINMENT: the attainment of goals/aim/objective**

1. This will deeply impress them on your memory, and these memory traces will soon start influencing your everyday behavior toward **the attainment of the goal**.

这将会把它们深深地铭记在你的脑海里。而这些记忆痕将很快开始影响你的日常行为,促使你朝着实现目标而努力。

2. Schools usually set as their educational objective **the attainment of a balanced development of a person**.

学校通常把一个人获得平衡发展作为教育的目标。

**C19. ATTENTION: bring...to public attention/claim/draw /come to the attention of**

1. Many of these workers are poorly educated and unskilled, and they often lack the union representation that has helped **bring other industrial disease to public attention**.

这些工人中许多没受过什么教育,又缺乏技术,他们往往没有自己的工会代表可以帮助他们让公众知道其他的职业病。

2. As for sowing methods—probably over half of Europe's seed was wasted every year before the Chinese idea of the seed drill **came to the attention of Europeans**.

至于播种方法,在中国人关于种子条播机的想法引起欧洲人的注意之前,也许欧洲每年要浪费一半以上的种子。

3. The sad condition of women working as domestics around the world **received much media attention** earlier this year in several highly publicized cases.

今年初几个透明度颇高的案例中,有关世界各地女佣的悲惨状况引起了新闻媒体的关注。

**C20. ATTEMPT: make an attempt/in an attempt to**

1. **Attempts** to break up this old system have been made in every presidential election in the past one hundred years.

在过去的 100 年中,人们极力想打破这个在历届总统大选中都实行的旧体制。

2. While conscious initial effort is always necessary, **effective solutions to especially severe problems frequently occur when conscious attempts to solve them** have been put off.

虽然开始时有意意识的努力总是必要的,而对特别棘手的问题,其有效的解决方法常常是在有意识去解决的努力被搁置时才想到的。

**C21. AVAILABILITY: the availability of information/  
money**

1. Much of the theory supporting the basis of freedom in America was linked directly to the **availability** of land and the **perfectibility** of man outside the corrupt influences of the city.

支撑美国实行自由的理论很大程度上是和土地的可用性以及人的完美性而不受城市腐败影响有直接关系的。

2. They do this in order that births occur with **the arrival of the rains, the availability of grazing, and the mother's adequate supply of milk for the young.**



它们这样做,是为了使生育正好与雨季相遇,并有大量的青草生长,这样母畜就有足够的奶水喂养幼仔。

**C22. AWARENESS: heighten/reduce/increase/sharpen/  
spark/obscure one's awareness of**

1. The Bhopal tragedy five years ago, when thousands of Indians died after an escape of chemicals, **sparked a belated environmental awareness** among India's middle classes.

5年前,因化学气体的泄漏而发生的伯帕尔惨剧使成千上万的印度人丧生。这个惨剧在印度的中产阶级中唤起了一种姗姗来迟的环保意识。

2. The computer could **obscure man's awareness** of the need to come to terms with himself.

电脑可能模糊了人需要对自身有限能力妥协的认识。

3. The intelligent listener must be prepared to **increase his awareness** of the musical material and what happens to it.

聪明的听众必须随时提高自己对音乐素材的认识以及有关这方面的意识。

4. Whether it be for homes, businesses, or recreational facilities, **this awareness has created a demand for** horticultural products that make a more natural, pleasing, and functional environment.

无论是对于居室、企业还是对于娱乐场所来说,由于园艺产品能创造出一个更自然、更怡人、更使人发挥作用的環境,所以,公众的这种意识产生了对园艺产品的需求。

**C23. BARRIER: a barrier to the development/progress**

1. But it is the lack of political will and the ineptness of established sociopolitical structures that are **major barriers** to the progress in this

field.

但是,由于缺少政治意志加上现有的社会政治结构的不完善,这就极大地阻碍了这个领域的发展。

2. A strict schedule makes it impossible for the tourist to wander off on his own; and anyway, **language is always a barrier to the contact with the local population.**

紧凑的日程安排使得旅游者不可能自己随便闲逛。不管怎样,语言总会阻碍他们同当地人的接触。

**C24. BELIEF: express/foster/hold a belief in; there is a widely accepted/held belief that; contrary to popular/general/growing belief**

1. It is a world founded on **belief in** science and the power of rational inquiry and in the ultimate capacity of humanity to shape its own destiny.

这个世界是建立在相信科学,相信理性研究的力量之上的,同时也是建立在相信人类能够影响自己命运的能力之上的。

2. The enormous success of science has **led to the general belief** that scientists have developed and are employing effective methods in gaining new knowledge.

科学的巨大成功,使一般人认为,科学家人数在发展,他们在利用有效的方法获得新的知识。

**C25. BOREDOM: to escape/interrupt/relieve boredom**

1. Only an occasional stop at a gasoline station or at a drug store to read movie magazines **interrupts their boredom.**

去加油站溜溜歇歇脚或到药店走走,读读电影画报这样可以解解闷气。

2. This includes keeping them in more suitable cages, allowing social animals like dogs to live together and trying to **reduce the boredom that these animals can experience**.

其中包括把它们饲养在较合适的笼子里,让狗这一类爱结交的动物生活在一起,尽量减少它们的寂寞。

**C26. CAPACITY: (has a )capacity for development/  
organization**

1. And it is this that calls into question **man's capacity** for adaptation—how will he do in this new society?

正是这一点使人的适应能力发生疑问,那么在这个新的社会里人类将会怎样做呢?

2. Hitler, aided by a phenomenal **capacity** for organization and by the **readiness** of Germany's great industrialists to finance his campaign, shrewdly utilized the prevailing attitude to establish his power.

由于他非凡的组织能力以及德国大企业家们愿意资助他的竞选,希特勒精明地利用了社会上的这种态度,建立了他的政权。

3. But of all our problems, the most immediate and pressing, the one which threatens to paralyze **our very capacity** to act, to obliterate **our vision of** the future, is the plight of the Negro of the center city.

但是,在所有我们最直接和紧迫的问题中,威胁到损伤我们的行动能力,威胁到遮住我们对未来的展望的就是市中心黑人的困境。

**C27. CELEBRATION: a celebration of freedom/  
achievement/success**

1. **Any celebration of** what has been accomplished during our first two centuries also requires **a commitment** to what remains to be done dur-

ing the third century.

庆祝在过去两个世纪里所取得的成就,同样需要对第三个世纪里所要做的事情承担起责任。

2. At this time, and in the place where so many great names in American history have trod, we renew **this celebration** of freedom in the full and certain knowledge that with it comes great responsibility.

此时,在美国历史上许多伟人所踩过的地方,我们重新庆祝获得的自由,确信随之而来的是巨大的责任。

**C28. CERTAINTY: be/become a certainty with/has certainty**

1. Some children learn best by rote, in structured environments **with high certainty** and strict discipline. Others gain success in the less structured “permissive” atmosphere of a “progressive” school.

有的孩子在高度稳定和严明纪律的严格环境中以死记硬背取得好成绩,另有一些则在“先进”学校比较宽松的环境里获得了成功。

**C29. CHALLENGE: meet/accept the challenge**

1. The greatest **challenge** to education is likely to come from our new opportunities for diversity.

对教育的最大挑战可能是来源于我们新的就业机会的多样性。

2. Because I had no formal training in any of these fields with the exception of engineering, I had to learn to **meet each challenge of managing a business as it arose**.

除了工程学,在所有这些领域里我都没受过正规的教育,所以每当出现一个工商管理方面的挑战时,我只好学着去迎接它。

3. Interest in historical methods has arisen less through **external chal-**

lenge to the validity of history as an intellectual discipline and more form internal quarrels among historians themselves.

人们之所以关注历史研究的方法论,主要是因为史学界内部意见不一,其次是因为外界并不认为历史是一门学问。

**C30. CHANGE: undergo/bring about/inaugurate great/marked change**

1. After crossing several time zones, sleep rhythms **undergo marked changes** during the first night.

经过几个时区后,睡眠规律就会在第一个晚上发生很大变化。

**C31. CHOICE: make a wise choice**

1. Balance such information with self knowledge, and you have some of the ingredients needed to **make intelligent, perceptive choices**.

把这些信息与你掌握的知识加以平衡,你就会获得做出既明智又有洞察力的决择所需要的素质。

2. Not only do lies not provide any hope, they invade the autonomy of patients and render them unable to **make informed choices** concerning their own health.

对病人隐瞒真情,不仅不能给予病人任何希望,还会侵犯病人的自由,使他们不能对自己的健康做出明智的选择。

3. **When choices are made among alternatives** such as those just described, it becomes plain that choosing one alternative often involve giving up another.

在上述几个方案中做出选择,显然,挑选一个意味着放弃另一个。

**C32. COMBINATION: (express/symbolize) a rare/happy combination of**

1. He **turned out to be an incredible combination of** strength and relaxation on the track.

在这方面他证明是把力量和放松结合得最好的人。

2. The modern world is **a combination of** Eastern and Western ingredients which are inextricably fused.

现代世界是一个东西方紧密融合的结合体。

**C33. COMFORT: take/derive/seek comfort from/  
enjoy the comfort of**

1. People **have taken comfort from** the idea that our brains are magically unique and could never be duplicated, never mind surpassed, by machines.

人的大脑是神奇般独特的、不能被复制、不用担心会被机器超过,想到这一点,人们感到了极大的安慰。

**C34. COMMAND: acquire/has/secure a good command of**

1. But this is not a business that can **be undertaken** in a day or swiftly improvised by **a mere command of the will**.

但这种事并非一天就能做成的,也不是靠征服意志就能一蹴而就的。

**C35. COMMENT: make comment about**

1. And there have been **comments made** about other structural aspects, too, such as the absence in English grammar of a system of coding social class difference.

在语言结构方面也始终有评论,如指责在英语语法中没有表示社会不同阶层的语言系统编码。

2. Old people are always saying that the young are not what they were.

**The same comment is made** from generation to generation and it is always true.

老年人总是说年轻人不像他们同龄时那样了。一代一代人做出相同的评论,而且总是真实的。

**C36. COMMITMENT: with the commitment to**

1. In its fullest sense this approach to marriage might define an indissoluble marriage as one which involves this deep, **total commitment to** each other and to God.

从这个全面意义上来说,这种婚姻方式很可能把牢固的婚姻释义为夫妻间和对上帝的深深的、全部的爱。

2. What incentives are there for a nation such as China, with vast coal reserves and a **commitment to** rapid economic development, to hold back on the burning of fossil fuels?

对中国这样一个煤储备量丰富、致力于经济快速发展的国家,有什么能够激励她不烧化石燃料?

**C37. COMPARAISON: in comparison with/to; make comparison**

1. Yet culture shock is relatively mild in comparison with the much more serious malady, future shock.

与更严重的弊证、即未来冲击相比,文化冲击相对来说要轻些。

2. The boredom that a man feels when he is doing necessary though uninteresting work is as nothing **in comparison with** the boredom that he feels when he has nothing to do with his days.

一个人当他在必须做无趣味的工作时所感到的乏味,和他成天无所事事而感到的乏味相比,几乎算不了什么。

3. The first two must be equal for all who are being compared, if **any**

**comparison** in terms of intelligence is to be made.

如果就智力进行比较的话,前两个因素对所有要比较的人必须是一样的。

**C38. COMPETITION: enter/get into competition with;  
in competition with/for**

1. In the Olympic Games, women not only cannot win any medals **in competition** with men, the gulf between them is so great that they cannot even qualify for the contests with men.

在奥运会上,女运动员在同男的竞争中不仅不能夺奖牌,而且他们之间的鸿沟这么大,她们甚至没有资格和男运动员同场竞技。

2. It would also place him **in competition with** other workers, which would be playing into the bosses' hands.

这样做还会把他置于同其他工人的竞争中,而这正中老板之意。

**C39. CONCENTRATION: the concentration of**

1. The lack of goods, services, and household aids, brought on by the country's **concentration** on heavy industry at the expense of consumer goods, affects women much more than men.

国家重视重工业,忽视消费品生产,由此带来的商品、服务设施和家用器具的短缺对女士的影响要比男士的大。

2. Strong economic and social currents encourage the continued **concentration** of the urban population which otherwise might disperse into more sparsely settled areas.

经济和社会的向上形势鼓励人们不断向城市集中,要不然的话这些人口会分散到人口较少的地区。



**C40. CONCERN:** there is /express/ arouse/ show/  
give concern over/for/about/with

1. I **have a deeper concern** about higher education and the current national mood.

我对高等教育和目前国家形势所处的状态的深深关切。

2. Meanwhile **the public show little concern about** the danger of total destruction by nuclear weapons: a possibility people are consciously aware of.

同时公众对核武器造成的全球毁灭的危险很少关心,虽然他们意识到这种可能性。

**C41. CONSIDERATION:** give consideration to;  
take sth. into consideration

1. Modern industry has expanded without any idea of the true nature of the human beings who run the machines, and **without giving any consideration to the effects** produced on the individuals by the artificial mode of existence imposed by the factory.

现代工业的发展根本不了解操纵机器的人的本质,根本不考虑工厂强加在个人身上的那种人为的生活方式所产生的影响。

2. All the argument sounds logical, but it is obvious that **no consideration is to be given to** his concern for either the women or the children.

所有这些论点听上去有道理,但它没有考虑到对妇女或者对孩子的关心。

**C42. CONNECTION:** there is/bear connection to

1. It also enables us to tell ourselves that the despair of homeless people

bears no intimate connection to the privileged existence we enjoy—when, in fact, we rent or purchase one of those restored townhouses that once provided shelter for people now huddled in the street.

同时也使我们告诫自己,无家可归者的绝望和我们享受到的特权生活没有密切关系的。而实际上,我们租的或买的那些修建过的市中心房子,曾经是现在流浪街头人的住所。

**C43. CONSCIOUSNESS: a national/world/class/  
deep consciousness**

1. If a person has emotional conflicts of which he is unaware, he will tend to repress memories that, if recalled, would produce anxiety by **bringing the conflicts to consciousness**.

如果一个人有感情冲突,而自己又没有觉察到,他往往会压制这些记忆。如果回忆起来就会想起这些冲突而出现忧虑。

2. In other words, the world of urban America as a dark place undeserving of support or help **has become fixed in the American consciousness**. And we are paying for that attitude in our cities today.

换句话说,美国城市作为一个黑暗的地方,不值得投资和帮助,这种想法已深深扎根于美国人民的思想意识中。今天我们的城市正在为这种态度付出代价。

3. Further study and better public understanding are needed, of course. But what is essential is **a global consciousness**.

当然,需要进一步研究和更好地理解公众,当然,更为重要的是全球的意识。

**C44. CONTACT: come into establish /create/need/  
regain/retain/strengthen( close/frequent/understanding)  
contacts with/between; bring/take sb. into contact with**

1. But our modern world of music also **brings us into contact** with music that is not always so quickly grasped.

然而,现代音乐世界却也让我们总是不能很快理解接触的音乐。

2. Hence, it can be argued that the people with whom we **come into contact in these various contexts are all likely to have exerted some influence** in shaping our attitudes, interests and even skills relevant to how we handle leisure.

因此可以这么说,我们在这些不同的环境所接触到的人们,很可能对我们的态度和兴趣的形成、甚至包括如何处理有关空闲时间的能力产生一定的影响。

3. National governments, also, **will be brought into closer and closer contact** with science.

同时,这将使各国政府同科学保持越来越密切的联系。

**C45. CONTRIBUTION: make a contribution to society/  
human**

1. "Someone who has **made a lasting contribution** to human civilization is great," said Dean Keith Simonton.

西门顿教务长说,“长期为人类文明作出贡献的人是伟大的。”

2. Their increasing demand for continuing education offers unprecedented opportunities for universities to **increase and extend their contributions to society**.

他们对继续教育的不断要求给大学以空前的机会,为增加和扩大对社会的贡献。

**C46. CONTROL: exert control over; bring ... under  
control**

1. Yet studies show that job satisfaction comes less from how much people

earn than from the challenge of their jobs and **the control they are able to exert**.

调查表明,工作所提供的满足不是来自攒多少钱,而是来自工作的挑战和对工作的控制力。

2. To **protect the value** of their invested capital, venture capitalists **desire control over** various corporate decisions.

为保障其投入资本的价值,风险资本家希望对公司的各种决定进行控制。

3. However, **very little control** can be exercised over the media used to generate information that comes to you.

然而,对曾经用来给你提供信息的媒体几乎没有什么控制。

4. But although this form of genetic engineering will **give us great control over mankind's future**, there are several reasons for caution.

但是,虽然这种基因工程会让我们极大地控制人类的未来,我们还是有许多理由表现出谨慎。

**C47. CONVICTION: confirm/express/deepen/hold/  
voice the conviction; carry/bring conviction to sb.;  
have/there is a strong/widespread that be in the conviction that**

1. He is in the full **conviction** that real knowledge is the end product of a thorough study of the history.

他深信,只有对历史加以透彻研究,才能真正学到知识。

**C48. CORRELATION: there is /find correlation between**

1. If he is bored and secure, he may invest very little—there being no necessary **correlation between** time devoted and emotion invested.

如果他感到厌烦但又安全,他可以几乎不用投资,因为在奉献

的时间和投资的精力之间没有必然的联系。

2. Yet when they studied the various sleep stages, they found no **correction between** sleep physiology and unhappy mood.

然而,当他们研究不同的睡眠阶段时,他们便发现睡眠生理学与不愉快的心情毫无联系。

**C49. CREDIBILITY: lose/enhance the credibility of /with**

1. For the emerging company, the association with a corporate partner may not only enhance the emerging company's balance sheet, but may **enhance its credibility** with customers, suppliers, investors and others.

对于新兴公司而言,与大公司合伙人联合,不仅可以使公司的资产负债表大为改观,而且还可以提高客户、供应商、投资者和其他人对公司的信任度。

2. Lies also do harm to those who tell them: harm to their integrity and, in the long run, to **their credibility**.

谎言也伤害说谎者自己,损害他们的真诚,并最终损害他们的信誉。

**C50. CRITICISM: be subjected to (harsh/sharp) criticism; challenge/defy/excite/invite/offer/resent/tolerate/survive(considerable/hostile/frank/severe/harsh) criticism; come under (fierce/sharp) criticism for**

1. A **commonplace criticism of** American culture is its excessive preoccupation with material goods and corresponding neglect of the human spirit.

对美国文化最常见的批评是其过分追求物质商品而忽视人的精神因素。

2. White collar office workers, too, have **come under criticism** recently

for robbing their bosses of their full-time services.

最近白领工作者同样受到批评,说他们没让他们的雇主得到全日制服务。

3. In a sense, science fiction is **criticism** of reality.

从某种意义上来说,科幻小说是对现实世界的批评。

**C51. CULTIVATION: the cultivation of personality/skill**

1. Those with a better education and in professional occupations may tend to seek recreation and personal development (e.g., **cultivation** of skills and hobbies) in leisure.

那些接受过较好教育的专业人员可能在空闲时更倾向于寻求娱乐和个人发展(如培养技能和爱好等)。

2. Second is, the **development** of character, especially the **cultivation** of military virtues such as obedience, loyalty, strength of will, self-control, capacity for sacrifice, and pride in responsibility.

第二是培养一个人的性格,尤其是军事素质如服从、忠诚、意志力、自控力、牺牲精神和责任感。

**C52. CURE: there is/develop no cure for**

1. Needs are limited, but not greeds. Science has **developed no cure for envy**, so our wealth boosts our happiness only briefly while shrinking that of our neighbors.

需要是有限的,而贪婪是没有止境的。科学并没有研制出克服妒忌的良方。所以财富也只能有限地增进我们的幸福,而同时却会损害我们邻居的幸福。

**C53. DEMAND: there is an increasing demand (pressure) for**

1. The fear may also **bring increasing demands** for police protection, and election of law-and-order politicians.

这种恐惧心理带给人们的是：要求警察的保护和选举法官的呼声越来越高。

2. As **the world demand for** new information technologies continues to experience unprecedented growth, a significant portion of available venture capital funds can be expected to be funneled into information, technology throughout the world in the next few years.

由于世界各国的需求，新信息技术继续以前所未有的速度增长，今后几年，世界各地的风险资本基金的大部分可望投入信息技术部门。

3. Since these new students also need unconventional hours—evenings, weekends or high-intensity courses that stuff a term's work into two weeks—their **demands for** learning bring a vague but real threat to the school establishment.

由于这些新学生也需要非常规时间——晚上、周末或者把一学期的课程压缩到两周高度紧凑的课时——他们对学习的要求给学校机构带来了含糊而现实的威胁。

**C54. DENIAL: the denial of**

1. **His denial** of our petition caused the students to rebel.

由于他拒绝了我们的请求，引起了学生们的反抗。

2. The need for gratitude is something we all feel, and **denial of it** can do much to harm the spirit of kindness and cooperation.

我们都需要感激，因此拒绝接受就会损害友好和合作的精神。

**C55. DEPARTURE: make/justify/mark a new departure  
in/from the traditional value/old method**

1. It should come as no surprise, therefore, to find social and biological mechanisms that encourage **the departure** of adolescent primates—including, I think, humans—from the family group around puberty.

毫不奇怪,人们发现社会和生物机制能够鼓励灵长类动物、包括人类在内,在青春期离开家庭。

**C56. DEVOTION: have devotion to**

1. **Devotion** to that land has been the source of conflict in this area in the last decade.

人们对土地的热爱是过去 10 年中地区矛盾冲突的源泉。

2. Success factor is largely a matter of luck—being in the right place at the right time. Others speak of **utter devotion** to work, combined with a degree of ruthlessness.

成功的因素主要是运气,即在合适的地方和合适的时间。但有的人认为是对工作极端的献身精神,加上一定程度的残忍。

3. Young people have an air of freedom, and they **have not a dreary commitment to mean ambitions** or love of comfort. They are not anxious social climbers, and they **have no devotion to material things**.

年轻人自由自在,他们并不为自私的抱负、舒适的追求所束缚。他们不急于爬社会的阶梯,他们不想投身物质利益的追求。

**C57. DESIRE: (have) a desire to/for**

1. It is a product of Americans' increasing prosperity and of **their desire to own a piece of land**.

这是美国人日益繁荣和有一块土地的愿望的结果。

2. Driven by the government's **desire for** a credible auto industry and by their own need to achieve economics of scale, automakers have em-



barked on expansion programs that envisage annual output of 600 000 vehicles by the mid-1990s.

政府有建立可信的轿车工业的愿望,企业有实现其规模经济效益的需要。受这两个因素的驱动,轿车生产厂家开始实施一系列发展规划,指望在 20 世纪 90 年代中期,轿车年产量可达 60 万辆。

**C58. DESIRABILITY: question/prove the desirability of**

1. Much has been written not only on **the desirability**, but also on the efficacy of contrastive studies in the teaching of English as a second or foreign language.

有关将英语教学作为第二语言或第二外语,对比或研究是否合乎需要或是否有效已有不少论述。

2. They questioned **the desirability and utility**, in the light of the international situation, of continuing the search for such a definition.

鉴于当时的国际形势,对于继续谋求这样一个定义是否可取或是否有用,他们表示怀疑。

3. This debate over **the desirability of** continued economic growth is of prime importance to business and industry.

这场有关持续经济发展的辩论对商业和工业都非常重要。

**C59. DISAGREEMENT: express/there is disagreement**

1. In many business situations different people's values about acceptable degrees of risk and profitability **cause disagreement about the correctness of** decisions.

在许多商业经济活动中,不同的人对于风险和利润可接受程度的判断,往往造成对决策正确与否的不同意见。

**C60. DISCOVERY: (make) the discovery of**

1. A young man's first car is less a means of transportation than a monument to **this discovery of youthful freedom**.

一个年轻人的第一辆汽车与其说是一种交通工具还不如说是发现年轻人自由的标志。

2. He is doomed to a wasted life; he has as little **prospect** of making a scientific **discovery** as an electronic brain has.

他注定要虚度一生。他就像电脑一样,不大可能做出任何科学发现。

**C61. DISPLAY: show (with) a display of**

1. The public **display of** fear, sorrow, anger, and irritation reveals a lack of self-discipline that should be avoided by the Positive Women just as much as by the Positive Man.

在公众场合表现出害怕、伤感、气愤和恼怒是缺乏自控能力的表现,而作为“自信女士”和“自信男士”都应该避免。

2. Instead of worrying only about whether television violence causes individual **displays of aggression** in the real world, we should also be concerned about the way such symbolic violence influences our assumptions about social realities.

不要去担心电视暴力是否会引起真实世界里暴力挑衅的出现,我们应该关心的是这些象征性的暴力是否会影响我们对社会现实的看法。

**C62. DISSATISFACTION: there is/express/voice/cause a deep/growing/widespread dissatisfaction with**

1. Those reporting a supportive home, work and social life **remained** far healthier than those **expressing dissatisfaction with** their private and work lives.

那些说他们有一个能支撑的家、稳定的工作和社会生活的人要比那些表示对他们的生活和工作不满的人健康得多。

2. Even so, social analysts **see no early end to the growing dissatisfaction of women that** is causing many to seek an outlet by running away from home and family.

即使如此,社会分析家们认为妇女的日趋不满不会很快消失,而这种不满造成许多人通过出走家庭来发泄。

**C63. DIVERSITY: There is/obtain wide/  
great diversity of opinion as to**

1. The division of labor **brought diversity of** occupation and with it individual variability.

劳动分工给职业带来多样性,伴随的是个人的变化。

2. Globalisation **has accentuated** the importance of cultural and ethnic **diversity** in cities as a factor in their openness to trade, international inter-urban migration.

一体化强调的是城市文化和道德多样化的重要性,它是城市向贸易,向国际城市化流动开放的一个因素。

**C64. DRAIN: a great/heavy drain on**

1. The notion, therefore, that Americans **are less of a drain on** the Earth than Chinese or Indians, because there are so many fewer of us, is an absurdity and a dangerous one.

说美国人对地球的资源消耗比中国人或印度人少,因为我们美国人口少,这种说法是荒谬的,危险的。

2. Dropout is more than an academic failure. **It is thought of** as a waste of precious faculty time and **a drain on** university resources already being used to capacity.

退学不仅仅是学习上的失败。它还被认为是对教师宝贵时间的浪费,是对早已紧缺的大学资源的消耗。

3. **The rapidly increasing drain on** resources comes not only from the population explosion but also from the “expectation explosion”.  
不仅是人口的快速增长,同样,不断膨胀的期望都迅速耗尽了国家的资源。

**C65. EAGERNESS: one's eagerness to do sth.**

1. In **their eagerness to extend** a popular brand's recognition and reputation to a new type of product, managers often overlook basic problems with the fit between the old name and the new item.  
经营者们因渴望将著名品牌的信誉展现到一种新产品上,而常常忽视了旧名称和新产品之间“一致”的一些基本问题。

**C66. EFFECT: exert/have a harmful effect on**

1. If so, this, too, might **have a conceivably fatal effect** on our hope for the existence of civilizations elsewhere.  
如果这样的话,可以想象这或许对我们希望各地出现文明社会的愿望产生致命的影响。
2. Although they did have some influence, heavy television viewing still **showed a significant effect**.  
虽然它们确实有些影响,但是过多地看电视还会显示其重大影响。
3. A highway code which was universally accepted could only **have a dramatically beneficial effect on** the accident rate.  
被大家普遍接受的公路法规对降低事故只会产生显著而有利的影响。

**C67. EFFICIENCY: improve/add/increase efficiency of**

1. It is obvious that the strength of a country's economy is directly bound up with **the efficiency of** its agriculture and industry, and that this in turn rests upon the efforts of scientists and technologists of all kinds. 显然,一个国家的经济实力和这个国家的农业、工业产出的效率有直接关系,而这一点又依赖于各个领域的科学家和技术人员的努力。

**C68. EFFORT: make/have/exert a(great/tremendous/persistent/sustained) effort to**

1. If clear definitions of academic dishonesty have been developed, and if **a reasonable effort has been made** to inform students that such offenses are treated seriously, the appropriate punishment for a willful offense should be some form of separation from the university.

如果学习上的作弊定义清楚,如果做出恰当的努力使学生知道这种作弊要受到严肃处理,那么对故意作弊的惩罚应当是开除出大学。

2. India is **making a determined effort** to bring down its birth rate, which is currently about 35 per 1 000, more than twice that in the United States.

印度正在作坚决的努力把出生率降下来,而目前的出生率是35‰,是美国的两倍多。

**C69. EMANCIPATION: represent an emancipation from errors/prejudice/control**

1. It can argued that all this represents a welcome **emancipation from** Victorian morality, and that it is a wholesome affirmation of independence.

人们认为:所有这些代表了对维多利亚道德观的一种可喜的解

放,是对独立的全盘肯定。

**C70. EMIGRATION: the emigration of people**

1. Many Third World nations with high unemployment and low wages have seen **an emigration of** workers to the developed nations.  
在很多失业率高、工资低的第三世界国家里出现了工人移居到发达国家的现象。

**C71. EMPHASIS: place/put emphasis on**

1. **His emphasis on** other worldliness in his songs certainly suggested grim **dissatisfaction** with his worldly status.  
他在歌中强调了其他世俗之事,当然也表明了他对自己社会地位的不满。
2. They **place great emphasis on** their individual differences, on having a great number of choices, and on doing things their own way.  
他们极为重视个性差异,注重拥有大量选择,强调各行其是。

**C72. ENCOURAGEMENT: provide/give encouragement**

1. Along with hire-purchase, rental and leasing schemes, they **provide encouragement** to spend more money.  
信用卡同分期付款、租赁等赊购方式一样,鼓励人们多花钱。
2. The point is that all this opinion goes beyond ill feelings; it suggests a strong national sense that **encouragement and development** of the city was to be in no sense a national priority.  
问题是这种看法不仅仅是不好的感觉,而且还表明一种强烈的国家意识:鼓励和发展城市绝不是国家的重点。

**C73. END: bring... to an end; put an end to**

1. Management, up to a certain level at least, is aware of the practice,

and in some industries employs entire cadres of people to curtail or **put an end** to it.

管理层(至少是某一层)意识到了这种做法,在某些产业里雇佣了一大批干部去阻止或结束这一做法。

2. On the contrary, the rapid growth in enrollment over the last 40 years has **come to an end**.

相反,过去 40 多年学生入学率快速增长的情况已经结束。

3. Wherever they occurred, inefficiency and waste were attacked and non-essential projects **were brought swiftly to an end**.

无论哪里出现低效率和浪费现象,都会遭到打击,非必要的项目也会迅速停下来。

4. If such a method is put to broad practical use in the near future, it could very well **bring the population explosion to an end** once and for all.

如果这种方法能在不久的将来广泛使用,它就可以从此结束人口激增的情况。

**C74. ENJOYMENT: enhance/heighten/afford/  
block the enjoyment of**

1. A continual **exposure of a generation to the enjoyment** of violence and cruelty is one way to corrode the foundations of a civilized society. 一代人不断从观看暴力和残忍中得到乐趣,这是侵蚀文明社会基石的一种因素。
2. In effect, we listen perceptively—and that is the one sure road to the **enjoyment of music**.

事实上,我们感觉灵敏地聆听,这是欣赏音乐的可靠途径。

**C75. ESCAPE: an escape from life realities/responsibilities**

1. Until recently daydreaming was generally considered either a waste of time or a symptom of neurotic tendencies, and habitual daydreaming was regarded as evidence of maladjustment or **an escape from life's realities and responsibilities.**

直到前不久,人们还普遍认为做白日梦不是浪费时间就是精神病的潜在症状,经常做白日梦被认为是心理失调的表现或是逃避生活现实和生活责任。

Within this synthesis we live our daily lives, and from it **there is no escape.**

在这个综合体中我们每天过着生活,我们是无法从这个综合体里逃脱的。

#### **C76. EXAMINATION: examination of**

1. **An examination of** all the variables in the test concluded that the unusually good results were due to the way he had handled the mice, the way he talked to them and the tone, the confidence, the reassurance, and the certainty in his voice.

对实验中所有变量进行检查可以得出结论:这些结果非同寻常的好,是因为他对待老鼠的方式,对它们讲话的方式和语调,他声音中的信心、安抚和坚定。

#### **C77. EXCESS: excess of**

1. There is certainly much work which is exceedingly troublesome, and **an excess of** work is always very painful.

当然有许多工作特别令人难受,而过多地工作总是痛苦的。

2. But such extremes are relatively rare, and there is a growing body of evidence to support the fact that most people suffer from **a lack of** daydreaming **rather than an excess of** it.



但这种极端的情况相对较少,大量证据表明:绝大多数人不是做白日梦太多,而是不做白日梦。

**C78. EXCHANGE: an exchange of**

1. A negotiation **is** more than **an exchange of** material objects.  
谈判不仅仅是交换物质而已。
2. Some philosophers argue that rights exist only within a social contract, as part of **an exchange of** duties and entitlements.  
有些哲学家论证说,权利只存在于社会契约中,是责任与权益相交换的一部分。

**C79. EXISTENCE: deny/threaten/justify the existence of**

1. The widespread **existence of** these rituals suggests that adolescent emigration from the family at puberty may have been common in many human societies at some earlier time.  
在早期人类社会中,这些礼仪到处存在,这表明青少年从家庭里搬出去住或许相当普遍。
2. **The existence of** the giant clouds was virtually required for the Big Bang, first put forward in the 1920s, to maintain its reign as the dominant explanation of the cosmos.  
巨大的宇宙云的存在,实际上是20世纪20年代首次提出的“大爆炸”得以保持宇宙起源论的主导地位所必不可少的。

**C80. EXPLANATION: have an explanation of**

1. Recently few scientists have noticed that the area looks as if an atomic explosion took place, but they have **no explanations** of how or why.  
最近很少有科学家注意到,这个地区看上去发生过原子爆炸,但他们不能解释其过程和原因。

2. The nonprofessional is only too anxious to hang on to any **explanation** that gives him the illusion of getting closer to the music's meaning.  
非专业的人渴望能给予任何解释,让他有一种错觉,他已接近某段音乐的内涵。

**C81. EXPOSURE: (heavy) exposure to**

1. Given continuous **exposure to** the world of TV, it's not surprising that the children we tested seemed to be more strongly influenced by TV than were the adults.  
考虑到不断接触的是电视世界,受测试的孩子似乎受电视的影响远远超过大人就不足为奇了。
2. Many of them grew up with it as teacher and babysitter, and have had lifelong **exposure to** its influence.  
他们中的许多人在将电视当作老师和保姆中长大,一生都在接受电视的影响。
3. In addition, large corporations can **benefit from exposure to** entrepreneurial companies and different management approaches.  
此外,大公司还能因接触创业公司和不同的管理方法而获益。
4. **Despite** their advanced degrees and their **own exposure to** many different kinds of teachers, they do not seem to understand how to relate to the students.  
尽管他们有高等学位,又亲身接触过许多不同类型的老师,他们似乎还是不懂如何理解学生。

**C82. EXPRESSION: offer/give/be an expression of**

1. Often, they are mired in procrastination—which is really nothing more than **an expression of** denial and fear.  
他们往往迟迟不肯行动,其实不过是拒绝和害怕的表现罢了。

2. And marking a book is literally an **expression** of your differences, or agreements of opinion, with the author.

在书上作记号实际上是在表达你同作者的不同看法或相同意见。

**C83. FAILURE: the failure to/of**

1. And **this failure to** recognize and analyze the interrelationships of linguistic and non-linguistic problems produces two major signs of ineffectiveness.

认识不到,也不去分析语言问题与非语言问题之间的相互关系造成了两大不足之处。

2. **The failure to** greet a person you recognize or to answer a greeting given to you is an unkindness to the other person, and very bad manner.

不与你认识的人打招呼,或对给你打招呼的人置之不理都是对他人的不友好,是非常不礼貌的。

**C84. FAMILIARITY: (have/acquire) familiarity with**

1. Edison's **familiarity with** the telegraph led to the first of his inventions—a vote recorder—for which he received a patent.

爱迪生凭着他对电报的熟悉,搞出了他的第一次发明:投票记录器,他因此获得了专利。

**C85. FLUCTUATION: a great/constant fluctuation;  
in policy/price/fluctuation of**

1. Thus, the liberation of women inextricably tied to the **fluctuation of** employment in China since 1949.

自1949年后妇女的解放与中国就业情况的好坏紧紧地联系在

了一起。

**C86. FONDNESS: cultivate/develop/have/fondness for**

1. For other people, however, the manly ideal consists in an open and aggressive **fondness** for combat, whereas we emphasize defensiveness, the readiness to repel any attack.

然而,对另一些人来说,男子的理想在于公开地、赤裸裸地喜欢交战,而我们强调的是防御,准备击退任何进攻。

**C87. FREEDOM: freedom from**

1. To the laborer, on the other hand, leisure means **freedom from compulsion**, so that it is natural for him to imagine that he fewer hours he has to spend laboring, and the more hours he is free to play, the better.

另一方面,对劳动者来说,闲暇则意味着摆脱束缚,结果他当然会这样想:劳动时间越少越好,他可以有更多玩乐的时间。

**C88. HINDRANCE: a hindrance to**

1. Programmes such as this are noteworthy less for the “stimulation” they offer than for the fact that that stimulation may become a substitute for, and so a **hindrance to**, judgements carefully arrived at and tested in the mind.

值得注意的是这类节目所提供的不是“刺激”,而是这样一个事实,即这种刺激可能替代,乃至妨碍人们需要仔细考虑,并通过大脑检验才能得出的判断。

2. American teachers report that their first language served an aid and not a **hindrance to** writing, since their students used Chinese when stuck in English to find a key word.

美国教师得出的报告是:他们的母语对他们的写作起到的是帮助作用,而不是妨碍作用,因为当学生不能用英语表达一个关键词而被卡住时,可以借助汉语。

**C89. IGNORANCE: display/betray one's ignorance of/about**

1. Our **great ignorance about** the distant past also makes it difficult to identify great men.

我们对远古的不了解,同样使我们很难确认伟人。

**C90. ILLUSTRATION: (give) an better illustration of**

1. And I can think of **no better single illustration of** the folly of Western complacency and self-satisfaction than the lesson to be drawn from the history of agriculture.

从农业史中获得的教训最能说明西方人沾沾自喜、自鸣得意的愚蠢之处。

**C91. IMITATION: the imitation of**

1. He lived in a period when originality and imagination were taking American music toward an independent style, away from **the imitation of** the music of other times and other countries.

他本人生活在这样一个时期,当时美国音乐正以其独创性和想像力脱颖而出,开创自己独特的风格,摆脱跟在别的时代和别的国家的音乐后面亦步亦趋的局面。

**C92. IMPACT: have/lessen the great impact on/of**

1. In general, ups and downs of the national economy can have a profound effect on city life, and the cities need help to lessen **the impact of** those ups and downs.

总的说来,国家经济的起伏对城市生活有着深远的影响,而城市需要帮助以便减轻这些经济起伏的冲击。

2. Those who doubt TV's influence might **consider the impact of** the automobile on American society.

那些怀疑电视影响的人或许会考虑汽车对美国社会的影响。

3. But the best of science fiction, the stories that **make a lasting impact on** generation of readers, are stories about people.

然而,科幻小说中的上乘之作,即能对几代读者产生持久影响的作品,都是写有关人的。

**C93. IMPORTANCE: be of importance/attach/  
give much importance to**

1. The strong tie between organized sports and the competitive ethic **has given greater importance to** men's sports than to women's, since man's role is viewed as more competitive and aggressive than women's.

组织性的体育和竞争观念之间的密切联系使人们更看重男人的体育,而不是妇女的体育。因为人们认为男人的角色比女人的角色更富有竞争性和好斗性。

2. Many inventors **attached great importance to**, and derived great benefit from, technological devices of different kinds that were usable in scientific experiments.

许多发明者非常重视在科学实验中非常有用的各种技术工具,并从中得到很大益处。

**C94. INABILITY: inability to do**

1. **Inability to relax**, to let go of a problem, often prevents its solution. 不会放松,而且对某个问题穷追不舍,常常会妨碍问题的解决。

2. it causes a breakdown in communication, a misreading of reality, **an inability to cope**.

它造成了交流的中断,对现实的误解,并且无法处理问题。

3. Much has been written about the “mass man” and about **the inability** of the average citizen **to affect** his own destiny.

写了许多关于“大众人”的事以及一般公民无法影响自己命运的事。

**C95. INCENTIVE: give/afford/there is a (strong/special) incentive to/for**

1. **The incentives** to engage in academic dishonesty on our campus included a lack of attention to even rudimentary precautions in the preparation and proctoring of examinations.

造成学生校园作弊的因素,包括在准备考试和监考中缺少基本的防范措施。

2. Their aim is to convince nations to change their systems of production and **provide incentives for** people to have fewer children and use less energy.

他们的目的是让这些国家相信只有改变他们的生产制度,并提供激励机制才能使人们少生孩子,少用能源。

**C96. INCREASE: increase in**

1. It has come to expect **the steady increase in** the standard of living that new developments in science and technology have brought to continue.

公众希望科技新发展带来的生活水准的稳步提高能继续下去。

2. First an idea is formed. Then this is tested by an experiment. The outcome, one hopes, results in **an increase in** knowledge.

首先是形成一种想法,然后通过实验加以测试,人们希望结果

是知识增长。

**C97. INDICATION: an indication of**

1. One's own blueprints, reports or analyses may be scrutinized in detail—perhaps even challenged—by a young person. This is not to be considered an insult or loss of face; nor is it **an indication of** “no confidence.”

一个人的蓝图、报告或分析可能会受到年轻人的仔细检查，甚至挑战。但这不能被认为是一种侮辱或丢脸，也并不表明其缺乏信心。

2. Low unemployment means most of the labor force has steady work. High unemployment is **an indication of** an economy in recession, or worse.

低失业(率)意味着大多数人有固定的工作;高失业(率)表明经济衰退,甚至更糟。

**C98. INDIFFERENCE: have/with indifference to/toward**

1. Our history is full of expressions and incidents that demonstrate the **indifference of our heroes toward** suffering or danger.

我们的历史(和语言)充满了许多词语和事例,从中显露出我们的英雄能够泰然面对痛苦或危险。

2. After that, his **youthful indifference to** studies and his unwillingness to think of a nonsports career caught up with him.

年轻时,他对学业漫不经心,加之他一直也不愿考虑运动员以外的职业,这一切终于给他带来了不幸。

**C99. IDENTIFICATION: identification with**

1. But what is essential is a global consciousness—a view that transcends



our exclusive **identification with** generation and political groupings into which, by accident, we have been born.

我们往往把自己看成是这一代人和这一政治派别的人,实际上却是出生的巧合。而全球意识超越了这种看法,这是最主要的。

**C100. INFLUENCE: exercise/exert/have a considerable/profound/great influence on/over**

1. In my opinion, universities **have greater potential influence** over our future than any other sector of our society.

根据我的看法,大学比起我们社会的其他部门来,对我们的未来具有更大的潜在影响。

2. It springs from Asians' common heritage of Confucianism, the philosophy of the 5th-century-BC Chinese sage whose teachings have **had a profound influence** on Chinese society.

它来源于亚洲人共同的儒教传统,即公元前5世纪那位中国圣人的哲学思想,他的教义对中国社会产生了深远的影响。

**C101. INSIGHT: afford/gain/give/get/have/an (clear/fair/critical) insight into**

1. In the past decade, academic research has **offered insight into** the feminine advantage.

在过去的10年里,学术研究对女性的优点给予了精辟的见解。

2. The extraordinary inventiveness, and **insight into** nature, of ancient and medieval China raises two fundamental questions.

在古代和中世纪,中国人具有非凡的创造力和对大自然的洞察力,这就提出了两个基本问题。

**C102. INSISTENCE: insistence on**

1. Britain is one of the easiest countries to enter, **despite its insistence** (often quoted as evidence of insularity) **on** maintaining border controls within the EU.

尽管英国坚持在欧盟内保持国与国之间的边境控制(这一点常被引用,以证明英国人的狭隘封闭性),但英国仍是世界上最容易入境的国家之一。

**C103. INTERFERENCE: suffer/require (personal/governmental)interference with/in**

1. The First Amendment is a shield, increasingly battered, against state **interference with** the press's functions.

第一条修正案是以保证新闻机构免受国家干涉而与抗爭为基准的。

**C104. INTEREST: find/take/have an interest in**

1. There are signs that medicine may be **taking a new interest in** the process, partly from curiosity, partly from an embarrassed realization that we have not been handling this aspect of disease with as much skill as physicians once displayed.

有迹象表明,医学对这个过程产生了新的兴趣,部分原因是好奇,部分原因是我们惭愧地认识到,在对付疾病这方面我们没能掌握像医生曾经展示过的技术。

2. They have a wide knowledge of everyday things, and **a keen interest in** their particular city and state.

他们对日常事务所知甚广,对自己所在的城市和州尤为关切。

**C105. JEOPARDY: put (place) ...in jeopardy**

1. Career education **puts individuals in jeopardy** because people today

change jobs with greater frequency than before. If we spend years educating people not for the dynamics and uncertainties of life but for one job or career, we may be doing them—and society harm.

在大学搞职业教育会使学生处于危险的境地。因为当今人们跳槽的频率远远超过以往。如果我们花了许多年培养的人不能适应生活的变化和动荡,只适应某一工作或单一职业,那么我们可能会害了他们,也害了社会。

2. We must realize that we are now using the word democracy to describe behavior that **places us and all other men in jeopardy**.

我们必须意识到,我们正在利用“民主”这个词去描绘要求一些会把我们和其他人置于危难境地的行为。

**C106. JUSTIFICATION: (there is) (sufficient) justification for; with (considerable/full) justification for**

1. Humanity's deepest desire for knowledge is **justification enough for** our continuing quest.

人类对知识的深深渴望足以证明我们不断探索的理由。

2. Some old people are oppressed by the fear of death. In the young **there is a justification for this feeling**.

有些老年人很怕死,精神上很痛苦,而年轻人怕死倒是情有可原的。

**C107. KNOWLEDGE: have/with a (little/common) knowledge of**

1. **A very little knowledge of** business history demonstrates that size offers no long-term protection for those who have no competitive advantage.

只要稍微懂得一点商行历史就会明白,对那些无竞争优势的企

业而言,经营规模并不能起长期的保护作用。

2. Heavy viewing of television tends to be associated with lower education and other socio-economic factors that **limit or distort one's knowledge about the real world.**

沉湎于看电视往往和文化程度低或其他社会经济因素有关,这些因素限制或歪曲了一个人对真实世界的认识。

3. Much of the news relies heavily on the reader's **knowledge** of social and cultural institutions that visitors to our country cannot be reasonably expected to possess.

读懂新闻在很大程度上取决于对这个社会文化及制度的了解,而这一切对我们国家旅游的人是不可能做到的。

**C108. LACK: display/show/have a lack of intelligence/common sense; (for) lack of ability/foresight/confidence/consideration**

1. All of these things may happen in other large cities, and undoubtedly do, but they reflect **a lack of caring**, a sickness of the soul, that I find difficult to accept and impossible to forget.

所有这些事件很有可能发生在其他大城市,而且毫无疑问会发生,但这也反映了缺少关怀,一种心灵病态,而对于这一切我难以接受,也不可能忘记。

2. One of the strangest aspects of this mechanical approach to life is the widespread **lack of concern** about the danger of total destruction by nuclear weapons.

在这种机械性地对待生活的方法中,最奇怪的一点是人们对核武器造成的全球毁灭的危险性普遍持有一种麻木不仁的态度。

3. Both types of distracters must be understood before the student can attempt to **remedy his lack of concentration.**

学生在试图改善自己注意力不集中之前,必须知道这两种引起注意力分散的因素。

**C109. LIKELIHOOD:** there is every/little likelihood of/  
that

1. **To reduce the likelihood of** error, scientists accept the word only of those whose ideas, theories, and findings are testable—if not in practice then at least in principle.

为了减少犯错误的可能性,科学家只相信那些人所说的话,因为他们的观点、理论和调查结果是可以检验的,即使不能在实践上得到检验,至少也要在理论上经得起检验。

**C110. LONGING:** have a great longing for

1. He **has a nostalgic longing for** a life of individualism, initiative and justice, a longing that he satisfies by looking at Westerns.

他渴望留恋一种个性化的、积极的和正义的生活,这种渴望是以西方人的生活为准则的。

**C111. LOSS:** be/entail/incur/suffer/show/a (heavy)  
loss of

1. Unfortunately, their migration occurred when economic changes were causing a **loss of such jobs**.

不幸的是他们向城市流动的时候,正值经济变化造成了大批失业。

2. **That loss of confidence** has not sprung overnight from the invention of a weapon.

我们丧失信心并非因为一夜之间发明了某种武器。

**C112. MAINSTREAM:** the mainstream of  
society/political thought

1. We should permit some people to reenter **the mainstream of society** by eliminating the social and vocational ostracism associated with an ancient record that does not reflect their present worth.

我们应当废除以过去记录为依据即在社会求职方面的歧视性规定,让他们重新回到主流社会中来,因为那些记录并不代表他们现在的情况。

2. A strong anti-urban attitude runs consistently through the **mainstream of American thinking**.

一个强烈的反城市倾向始终在美国人的主流思想里流动。

**C113. MAINTENANCE: the maintenance of peace/  
justice/order**

1. To the sociologist, then, medicine is the institution concerned with **the maintenance of** health and the treatment of disease.

对社会学家来说,医学是关系到维持健康,治疗疾病的领域。

**C114. MANIFESTATION: a manifestation of**

1. Maternal love, however, is not a weakness but **a manifestation of strength and service**, and it should be nurtured by women.

但母爱不是软弱的表现,而是力量和服务的象征,应该由妇女来培养。

2. In contrast, the sociological viewpoint stresses the societal function of religion. They viewed religion as **a manifestation of** social solidarity and collective beliefs.

相反,社会学家的观点强调宗教的社会功能。他们认为宗教表现了社会的团结和集体的信仰。

**C115. MANIPULATION: be a manipulation of**

1. One would think that a culture dedicated to systems—engineering, production, and **manipulation of** the natural environment would have a clear notion of the function.

人们认为如果一个社会致力于工程、生产和自然环境改造系统,那么这个社会对其功能就会有一个清楚的了解。

**C116. MARK: a mark of inferiority/wisdom/ignorance**

1. While today most young people are just plain illiterate about world geography, cross-cultural comprehension and understanding will be not only **the mark of** an educated person, but a requisite for tomorrow's economic survival.

虽然今天大多数年轻人不了解世界地理,但是对多文化的理解和了解,不仅仅是一个受过教育的人的标志,而且是其在未来经济中生存的必要条件。

2. I cannot think of chimpanzees developing emotions, one for the other, comparable in any way to the tenderness, protectiveness, tolerance and spiritual joy that are **the mark of** human love in its truest and deepest sense.

我无法想像猩猩相互之间会产生类似那种标志着人类之爱的最真挚的、最深沉的情感,比如温柔、呵护、容忍和精神上的愉快等等。

**C117. MASTERY: a mastery of skills/techniques/nature**

1. There have been poverty, pestilence, and famine, which were due to **man's inadequate mastery of nature**. (《研究生英语精读》)

人们长期以来受贫困、瘟疫和饥饿的困扰,主要是因为人类还未能有效地驾驭自然。

2. **A sense of mastery over** one's destiny is an essential asset to good

physical and emotional health.

掌握自己的命运就是一种对健康体魄和精神的重要财富。

3. From information seeking come not only greater use of information and eventual **mastery of new situation** but also a sense of heightened self-awareness, enhanced coping skills and personal growth.

不仅仅是越来越多地运用信息和最终掌握新的形势来自于寻求信息的活动,而且那种强烈的自我意识,较高的应付技能和个人成长都产生于寻求信息的活动。

**C118. MEASURE: be a/the measure of**

1. We may say, then, that originality is what distinguishes art from craft and **is the measure of** artistic greatness or importance.

我们或许可以这样说,独特性能区别艺术和手工艺,能衡量艺术成就或艺术重要性。

2. He **was famous** in his time for analyzing the brain size as **a measure of** intelligence.

在他那个时代,他是以分析人脑大小来测量人的智力而著名的。

**C119. MEMORY: arouse/awaken/ cherish/ bring back the memories; the memories of... is failing/fading/dimming; have a clear memory of**

1. Those for whom **memories of** high school genetics are dimming might want to be reminded that everything is determined by the information on our set of chromosomes.

我们或许要提醒那些正在忘记高中里遗传学课程的人,所有的东西取决于我们的染色体的信息。

2. Fast food won't be around forever, a thought that both comforts and



saddens me. I'll be among those who **cherish the memory of** driving down the highway.

将不会有快速食品了,想到这一点使我既感到舒服又感到伤心。我会成为经常想念在高速公路上驾车奔驰的人中的一员。

3. If the very originators of the inventions and discoveries no longer claim them, and if even **their memory of them has faded**, why should their inheritors trouble to resurrect their lost claims?

如果他们对于这些发明和发现的记忆都已经逐渐消失,他们的继承人又何必费神要求恢复他们失去的所有权呢?

4. If you have to learn a skill or **commit something to memory**, the question arises as to whether you should complete the job in one setting, or whether it is better to spread the learning over a number of periods.

如果你必须学一门技能或记住一些东西,这样就产生了如下问题:你是一下子完成这项学习,还是最好分几个阶段学。

**C120. MENACE: constitute/ become a potential/ serious menace to/of**

1. This growing poverty in the midst of growing poverty **constitutes a permanent menace** to peace.

日益加剧的贫困对世界和平构成了永久的威胁。

2. Politically barren they may have been, as his lonely voice struggled to **awaken Britain to the menace of Hitler**.

政治上这些年来没有什么成果,因为只是他一人在大声疾呼,想要唤醒英国人认识到来自希特勒的威胁。

**C121. MENTALITY: modern/average/children's/ normal mentality**

1. The average man merely swallows this theory because there is something about it that **appeals to the twenty-century mentality**.

一般人不加任何分析就全盘接受了这一理论,因为其中有一种迎合 20 世纪人心理的东西。

2. And this in turn **explains** why similar starting conditions may lead to sharply dissimilar outcomes—an idea alien to **the mentality of that society**.

而这样反过来可以解释,为什么一些最初相似的情况后来导致完全不同的结果,这一点是那个社会的人所想不到的。

**C122. MISUNDERSTANDING: there is/have/  
lead to a misunderstanding of**

1. The point seems to be quite simple, yet failure to grasp it has caused considerable friction and **misunderstanding** between American and German managers overseas.

观点非常简单,然而不能理解它会造成美国和德国海外经理之间的矛盾和误解。

**C123. MONOPOLY: enjoy/establish/break/  
have a monopoly of /on**

1. During the Middle Ages many scholars regarded printed books with apprehension. They felt that books would **destroy their monopoly on** knowledge.

在中世纪,许多学者以恐惧的眼光看待印刷的书,他们感到书打破了对知识的垄断。

2. As a result, the defeated major party is able to **maintain a monopoly of** the opposition.

结果,失败的主要政党能够保持其对反对党的垄断地位。

3. Their **views have a monopoly on goodness and truth**, and the rest of us are, at the very least, morally suspect.

他们的观点垄断了善美和真理,而其余的观点至少在道德上是受到怀疑的。

4. At present, law-enforcement agencies **have a monopoly on crime figures**, which means that they may be tempted to manipulate the statistics in their favor.

目前,执法机关垄断了犯罪数据,这意味着他们有可能为自己的目的操纵数据。

**C124. NEED: (eliminate/do away with) the need for**

1. Technology and the division of labor have done two things: by **eliminating** in many fields **the need for** special strength or skill, they have made a very large number of paid occupations which formerly were enjoyable work into boring labor.

技术和劳动分工做了两件事情:由于取消了许多领域对特别强度和技能的要求,从而使许多以前有趣的、有报酬的工作变成了乏味的苦役。

2. Social progress has done away with **the need for** backbreaking work and has provided time for personality development.

社会进步使得人们不必累死累活地干活,从而给个性培养提供了时间。

**C125. NEGLECT: show /no neglect of**

1. Co-dependence is an emotional state perpetuated by fear and low self-worth that results in **neglect of** personal needs and goals.

互相依赖是一种因害怕和自我信心不足而促成的情感,由此导致了忽视个人的需要和目标。

**C126. NECESSITY: prove/point to the necessity of/for**

1. The **signs** of the times **point to the necessity of** the modification of the system of administration.  
管理体制需要改革,这是时代的标志(特征)。
2. More and more people have **realized the necessity of** learning computer.  
越来越多的人认识到了学习计算机的必要性。
3. Work is more than **a necessity for** most human beings; it is the focus of their lives, the source of their identity and creativity.  
对大多数人来说,工作不仅仅是一种必需,它还是人们生活的焦点,是他们个性和创造性的源泉。

**C127. NUISANCE: be a nuisance to**

1. We were certainly aware that the dust levels **were a nuisance to** employees, but we were not aware of physical disabilities.  
我们当然意识到尘土会对雇员带来讨厌,但是我们没有意识到对他们身体上的伤残。
2. Pollution was not only seen **as a nuisance that** blackened buildings, but as a pervasive **threat to** human health.  
污染不仅仅被认为是弄黑房子的讨厌东西,而且被认为是对人类健康的全面威胁。

**C128. OBJECTION: there is/has(no) objection to**

1. Although little emphasis is placed on the lively style of such writing, **there is no objection to** writing that is pleasing and interesting.  
虽然不大强调这种文章的活泼风格,但不反对令人愉快的、有趣的文章。

2. You may **have another objection to** marking books. You can't lend them to your friends because nobody else can read them without being distracted by your notes.

你或许还会反对在书上做记号:你不能把书借给朋友,因为他们读你的书时不能不被你书上记的东西分散注意力。

**C129. OBSERVATION: have /make a closer/  
careful observation of /that**

1. However, **closer observation of** current trends raise some serious questions about that argument.

然而,仔细观察目前的形势,你就会对那个论点提出一些严肃的问题。

**C130. OBSESSION: obsession with**

1. Our attitude towards the migrants is rooted in **our obsession with** order and cleanliness—the attitude so familiar and so common that it has become a second nature and might as well be instinctive.

我们对外来民工的态度根植于对清洁的迷恋。这种态度司空见惯,已成为人的第二反应,也变成了人的本能。

2. America's **obsession with** physical fitness really amuses—and puzzles—Europeans.

美国人迷恋于锻炼身体,这使欧洲人非常好笑,也感到迷惑不解。

**C131. OBSTACLE: there is/meet an obstacle  
to the growth/advance**

1. Religionists have held that wealth may actually **be an obstacle to** achieving happiness.

宗教主义者认为财富或许会阻碍人们获得幸福。

2. In their view, the slave economy **was an obstacle to** industrial growth and expansion in the new territories.

他们认为,奴隶制度阻碍了工业的发展和新领地的扩张。

3. A regional accent **is often a serious obstacle to** finding a good job and to status mobility rather than personal ability.

地方口音比个人能力往往会更严重地阻碍一个人找到好工作和获得提升。

**C132. ORIENTATION: has need an orientation toward**

1. We **need**, first of all, **a radically new orientation toward** the future.

首先我们需要对未来有一个全新的了解。

2. Thus I **gained a remarkable orientation**, which perhaps could hardly have been achieved in any other way.

这样我获得了非凡的了解,而这用其他方法是几乎不可能取得的。

**C133. PARTICIPATION: withdraw/encourage/oppose one's(ever-increasing) participation in the political/public life**

1. Women tend to share power, **encourage participation**, and boost their employees' sense of self-worth.

妇女往往愿意与别人分享权力,鼓励他人参与,提高其雇员的自我价值意识。

**C134. PASSION: arouse/develop/have/ with a strong passion for**

1. Today, researchers have evidence that **an intrinsic passion for** one's work is a key to rising above.

当今研究人员有证据表明对工作发自内心的爱是成功的关键。

2. The Americans **have a passion for** grandeur. Their skyscrapers, bridges and dams often have a splendor which matches in beauty and scale the country's natural wonders.

美国人酷爱豪华的气派,他们的摩天大楼、桥梁和水坝往往气势壮观,与美国的自然奇观之壮美和恢弘相得益彰。

3. But now, health experts warn, **the nation's passion for** physical activity has spiraled out of control.

但是卫生专家们警告说,目前全民搞体育的激情已失去控制。

**C135. PERSPECTIVE: have/get/gain perspective on**

1. While we may feel the effects of rapid social and technological change daily, it is difficult, precisely because of our immersion in a changeful environment, **to gain perspective on** what is happening.

虽然我们每天可以感受到社会和技术的快速变化,但是由于我们自己本身处在变化的环境中,就很难清楚地认识正在发生的事。

2. **To get a better perspective on** who makes it to the top—and why—I interviewed some executives from some of the biggest corporations in the country.

为了很好地了解谁取得了成功,为什么会取得成功,我采访了几个全国最大的公司的几位总经理。

3. It awakens me to the precariousness of life and the wonder of love. It **brings me a renewed perspective upon** life's real joy and real pain. 它使我意识到生命的脆弱和爱情的神奇,也使我对生活的真正快乐和痛苦有了重新认识。

**C136. PERVERSION: a perversion of**

1. This situation is **a perversion of** the true spirit of a university, a perversion of a humane social ethic.

这种形势是对大学真实精神的歪曲,是对人类社会道德的歪曲。

**C137. POPULARITY: rise/decline in popularity; enhance/enjoy/gain /find the popularity of/among**

1. As venture capital **has grown in popularity**, venture capital investing has emerged as a major financial investment vehicle.

由于风险资本越来越受欢迎,所以它已成为金融投资的重要手段。

2. However, **its current popularity has grown** very rapidly since it was given new impetus and direction.

然而,由于得到了新的动力和指导,这个理论迅速赢得了人们的欢迎。

**C138. POSSIBILITY: (there is) the possibility of/that**

1. Some of the major banks, for example, are **studying the possibility of** entrance examinations that would test the knowledge and abilities of graduates applying for jobs.

例如,有些大银行正在研究入门考试的可能性,以测试求职的大学毕业生的知识和能力水平。

**C139. POSSESSION: gain/obtain/secure/retain possession of; in (full) possession of**

1. I feel that in a task of this sort it is very important not to know too much, but yet to **be in possession of** a boundless enthusiasm for the



Chinese people and their achievements over the ages.

我感觉到在这个任务中非常重要的一点是：不是要知道得太多，而是要对中国人民和他们在几个世纪里取得的成就表露出无限的激情。

2. The new immigrants came not to **take possession of** and cultivate the land as in the past, but to work in the factories, and in the construction sites.

新移民的到来不像过去一样为了占有和耕种土地，而是要在工厂和建筑工地工作。

**C140. PREOCCUPATION: be preoccupation with**

1. In a world troubled by economic and political instability, **the preoccupation with private decision** is shifting to concern about the whole of humankind.

在一个经济和政治动荡的世界里，一心关心个人的决定正转向考虑整个人类。

2. Active concern for the world permits either celibacy or marriage, but **continuous preoccupation with sex** leaves no time for anything else. 对世界的关心要么使人保持独身，要么结婚，但沉溺于性生活就会没时间关心任何事。

3. If **the preoccupation** of schools with academic work **was lessened**, more time might be spent teaching children surer values. 如果学校的注意力少放一点到学业上，就有可能将更多的时间用到教育孩子认识真正的价值观上。

**C141. PRESENCE: make one's presence felt; during one's presence; in the presence of**

1. Recent studies have shown that the sexual development of young fe-

males is inhibited specifically by **their mothers' presence**.

最近的研究表明,年轻女子的性功能,由于其母亲在身边而不能健康发展。

2. **In the presence of strangers** or foreigners he often seems inhibited, even embarrassed.

在陌生人或外国人面前,英国人常常显得拘谨,甚至局促不安。

3. So a mother and father who have ever cared for pets are likely to avoid making negative or rude remarks **in the presence of a child**, no matter how young.

因此,养了宠物的父母很可能在孩子面前不讲坏话或粗话,不管孩子多小。

**C142. PRESSURE: pressure for; put pressure on**

1. The exaggerated sense of risk and insecurity may lead to increasing demands for protection, and to **increasing pressure for** the use of force by established authority.

这种夸张的危险感和不安全感造成了人们要求得到保护的呼声越来越高,也给当局带来了越来越大的压力,迫使其使用武力。

2. For another, the extremely demanding system **puts enough psychological pressure on** students.

其次,非常严格的制度给学生施加了太大的心理压力。

**C143. PRODUCTIVITY: increase/block the productivity of**

1. In the student's life there are many psychological pressures and tensions which **block effective productivity**.

在学生的生活中,有很多的心理压力和紧张,因此降低了学习效率。

**C144. PROLIFERATION: the proliferation of**

1. I am not, however, particularly concerned with **the steamy proliferation of** gossip in the nation's press, since no one gets into those columns unless they're renowned or notorious and indeed have worked at achieving such visibility.

然而,我并不十分关心国家报刊上源源不断冒出来的小道消息,因为一个人若不是特别知名或臭名昭著,而且确实能做到这样露脸,他们是不可能进入这样的专栏的。

**C145. PROSPECT: see/have/there is/no/little prospect of success/promotion**

1. Many American firms have taken fright at **the prospect of** being locked out of China while companies from Japan and Europe crowd in. 日本和欧洲的公司大批涌入中国,而美国的公司却将被拒之门外,许多美国公司对这种情景深感惊恐。
2. This seems a discouraging thought. But, in fact, it could **offer the prospect of a better future for work.**

想到这一点似乎令人不快。但事实上这让我们看到了这份工作美好的未来。

3. Others **resent the prospect of** being "put on the scrape heap", and seek alternative outlets for their energies and alternative sources of satisfaction or joy.

另外一些人想到自己要被视为“废物”而抛弃,心中不免愤愤然,于是他们寻找别的方法来发泄自己的精力,寻找别的途径来得到满足和快乐。

**C146. PROTECTION: afford/provide adequate/little protection from/against; a protection for/against/of**

1. Voluntary premarital testing for AIDS is a **protection for** both partners and for the uncontaminated and unborn children.

婚前自愿测试艾滋病不但为了保护双方,同时也为了保护还没出生的孩子不受感染。

2. We are dealing not just **with the protection of** the innocent but with an essential step to contain the spread of an epidemic as tragic and as horrible as any that has befallen modern man.

我们不仅仅在保护无辜者,而且采取了重要措施以控制流行病的蔓延,因为这场流行病是现代人碰到的最悲惨、最可怕的病。

**C147. PUBLICITY: accord/give publicity to; gain/seek publicity through**

1. A faculty member **generated national publicity for** the University of Maryland last year by apprehending several students who had taken examinations for others.

去年,马里兰大学的一位教师抓住了几个为他人代考的学生而知名全国。

2. World-famous for his works he was never personally well known, for the throughout his life he **avoid publicity**.

他的成就驰名全世界,而他个人却始终默默无闻,因为他整个一生总是避免抛头露面。

**C148. PURSUIT: in the pursuit of**

1. It is a revealing fact about our language and our culture that someone dedicated to **pursuit of knowledge** is compared to such a freak.

把专心追求知识的人比做这样一种畸形人,这一事实突出地反映出了我们的语言和文化的现状。

2. The life of a journalist can be exciting. To **be in constant pursuit of** the latest news demands a curiosity that can only be rewarded by getting to “where it is happening” as soon as possible.

记者的生活是有趣的。要不断追求最新消息需要有一种好奇心,而这种好奇心只有通过尽快赶到现场才能激发出来。

3. Indeed, in some respects Americans may believe **the “pursuit of happiness” to mean the pursuit of material things.**

确实,在某种意义上说,美国人认为追求幸福就意味着追求物质利益。

**C149. QUEST: in quest of/The quest for truth/  
knowledge**

1. What we are already beginning to see, **in our accelerating quest for** artificial body parts, is a convergence of man and machine.

在加快追求人造身体器官方面,我们已开始看到的是人和机器的一致性。

2. To be an Athenian is to hold knowledge and, especially, **the quest for knowledge** in high esteem.

做一个雅典人就是要尊重知识,特别是要追求知识。

**C150. REACTION: (in) reaction to**

1. This remark **accounts for our reaction to** seemingly simple innovations like plastic garbage bags and suitcases on wheels that make life more convenient: “How come nobody thought of that before?”

这番话可以这样解释:为什么我们对塑料垃圾袋和滚轮箱子这些看来十分简单、但对生活十分方便的小发明会作出这样的反

应：“怎么以前没有人想到呢？”

2. **The common-sense reaction to** this state of affairs is to conclude that one historian is right while the other is wrong. But seldom this is the case.

对这种事态合乎情理的反应是：下结论说一个历史学家是对的，而另一个历史学家是错的。但事实往往不是这样的。

**C151. REALIZATION: at the realization; come to a (full) realization of; bring me the realization that**

1. Yet there is no reason for us to feel inferior or downcast **at the realization** that much of the genius of mankind's advance was Chinese rather than European.

意识到使人类进步的天才大多是中国人而不是欧洲人时，我们就没有理由感到自卑和沮丧。

2. Advertising campaigns have, however, **promoted a growing realization of the advantages** of these small plastic cards.

然而，广告公司大做广告，让越来越多的人意识到这种小塑料卡的好处。

3. **Understanding and accepting that true happiness has nothing to do with fun is one of the most liberating realizations we can ever come to.**

理解并能接受真正的幸福与寻欢作乐毫无关系，这是我们思想解放的最好认识。

4. We will continue to lose ground and squander our educational resources until teenagers and their parents **come to the full realization that** academic achievement requires the same motivation and active involvement as achievement in sports or music.

我们会继续失去阵地，浪费我们的教育资源，直到年轻人和他们的家长充分认识到：取得学习上的成绩和取得体育或音乐上

的成绩一样需要动力和努力。

**C152. RECOGNITION: there is a (one's) the recognition (of)**

1. Today **there is a fast-spreading recognition** around the world that progress can no longer be measured in terms of technology or material standard of living alone—that a society that is morally, politically, environmentally degraded is not an advanced society, no matter how rich or technically sophisticated it may be.

今天世界上越来越多的人认识到,进步再也不能仅仅以技术或物质生活水平来衡量。一个在道德上、政治上和环境上退步的社会不是先进的,不管它多么富裕或技术上多么先进。

2. His willingness to experiment with reforms stemmed not so much from a love of democracy as from **his recognition that** without reform the nation would slide toward economic ruin.

他愿意进行改革的实验与其说是出于他对民主的爱,还不如说是他认识到没有改革,国家的经济就会崩溃。

**C153. REDUCTION: a reduction of**

1. In the last five years, the death rate in the United States has undergone the sharpest decline primarily **because of a reduction in heart diseases** owing to individual efforts at health maintenance.

过去5年里,美国的死亡率大幅度下降,主要原因是由于个人致力于保健,使心脏病大为减少。

2. The voluntary three-week program uses family contacts, **stress reduction** and talk-it-out therapy from 8 a.m. to 9p.m. every day.

一个疗程三个星期。自愿参加,每天上午8点到晚上9点,采用与家人接触、减轻紧张情绪以及把问题谈出来的治疗方法。

**C154. REFLECTION/MIRROR: a (good/faithful)  
reflection/mirror of**

1. That football should become our “national pastime” is understandable to those who can see sports as **reflections of** national character.  
足球应当成为我们国家娱乐体育这种观点,对那些把体育看成是反映民族特征的人是可以理解的。
2. Create a character, and let his exterior conflict be **the mirror of** the protagonist's own interior conflict, the clash of his desires, his own strength against his own weakness.  
塑造一个人物,让他的表面冲突反映出主人的内心冲突,反映出他的矛盾心理,反映出他以自身的力量战胜其弱点。
3. The kind of future a society creates and SF envisions is in part **a reflection of** the needs and fears and the hope of the present.  
一个社会创造的或科幻小说憧憬的未来,部分反映了现实社会人们的需要、恐惧和希望。
4. Whether the armed services or college campus, they have always been and will always be **a reflection of society as whole**.  
不管是部队还是大学校园,它们始终也将永远反映整个社会。

**C155. REFUSAL: refusal to do sth.**

1. A great leader must have a certain irrational quality, **a stubborn refusal to face** facts, infectious optimism, the ability to convince us that all is not lost even when we're afraid it is.  
一个伟大的领袖必须有某种非理性的特点:固执地不愿面对现实,有感染力的乐观精神。在我们担心一切都已失去时,有能力使我们相信事实并非如此。
2. That he does not make the point in his memoirs follows from **his re-**



**fusal** to admit that the alliance was in fact transformed in Russian interests.

他在回忆录中没有指出这一点,由此可以推断他并不承认联盟实际上已转向有利于俄国了。

**C156. REJECTION: (a) rejection of**

1. I have seen white children standing in one of the mixed buses rather than sit beside anyone who was not white and this seems to me so complete a **rejection of** another human person that it goes much further than the division and separation backed by law.

我看见过白人孩子在一辆白人和黑人混合的公共汽车上站着,而不是和非白人同坐,这对我来说似乎是对另一种人十足的歧视,它比起有法律支撑的隔离更深刻。

**C157. RELIEF: bring/seek/find relief from**

1. **Stories should affords us relief from** our daily doings by taking us beyond our accustomed horizons.

故事应该把我们带出所熟悉的世界,让我们从日常事务中解脱出来。

2. At times, they may **find relief** by hunting big game in Africa, or by flying ground the world.

他们会时常到非洲打猎或坐飞机到世界各地去旅游以便放松自己。

**C158. RELUCTANCE: show/feel reluctance to; in one's reluctance to do; sacrifice sth. with reluctance**

1. **Reluctance** among men to retire was associated with anticipated deprivations, mainly of money rather than of attachment to work.

男人不愿退休主要与挣钱有关,而不是对工作依恋。

**C159. RELIABILITY: prove/assess the reliability**

1. I very much like the idea of teaching students to **assess the reliability** of a story based on information about its source.

我赞成这样的想法,即要教会学生根据一篇新闻报道的消息来源,来判断该新闻的可靠程度。

2. How well the predictions will be validated by later performance depends upon the amount, **reliability**, and appropriateness of the information.

这些预测在多大程度上为后来的表现所证实,这取决于信息的数量、可靠性和适宜性。

3. Earthquake prediction is still a young science. Everyone agrees that earthquakes cannot be predicted **with any reliability**.

地震预报还是一门年轻的科学。大家都认为目前我们还不能非常可靠地预测地震。

**C160. REQUIREMENT: the requirement of**

1. "Knowledge is power" may well be the truest saying and access to information may be **the most critical requirement** of all people.

如今,“知识就是力量”很可能是最千真万确的格言,而获取信息也许是所有的人最迫切的需求。

**C161. RESEMBLANCE: bear little/no/much resemblance to**

1. But this view, however appealing, **bear little resemblance** to what is happening in cities all over the world.

不管这个观点多么吸引人,但不能真实地反映世界各城市发生

的事。

2. To ensure the widest acceptability, the plot lines follow the most commonly accepted notions of morality and justice, whether or not those notions **bear some much resemblance to reality**.

为了确保故事被尽可能多的人接受,情节是按照大多数人所接受的道德和公正的看法发展的,不管这些看法与现实是否相符。

**C162. RESISTENCE: offer/give no/little resistance to**

1. The presence of this power may be recognized in its turn either by the existence of some specific sanction or by **the resistance offered against** every individual effort.

这个大国的出现要么被一些特别制裁的存在所认可,要么被对一些个人努力的抵制所认可。

**C163. RESPONSE: make a effective response to/in response to**

1. Moral condemnation were not **sufficient response** to the serious incidents we were encountering.

道德上的谴责并不是对我们遭遇到的严重事件的充分反应。

2. **Our response to** sympathy and tenderness is reserved, since we cannot tell whether those feelings are genuine or simulated. (Expanding Reading Skill)

我们对这些同情和温柔的反应是有保留的,因为我们并不能肯定这些感情是真的还是装出来的。

3. Many people believe that individualism and the pioneer spirit is **the response to** the challenge of opportunity, to the challenge of nature, and to the challenge of life.

许多人认为个人主义和开拓精神是对机会挑战的反应,对自然挑战的反应和对生活挑战的反应。

**C164. REVELATION: a revelation of**

1. Every trivial act is interpreted **as a revelation** of the moral philosophy of the individual actor.

每个细小的动作都被视为是个人社会舞台上道德观的表露。

2. It came not as **a Nixon revelation** but rather as a confirmation of the *Times* story.

这不能算尼克松透露了什么新东西,只不过证实了《泰晤士报》的报道而已。

**C165. REVERSAL: (suffer/bring about/result in)  
a dramatic reversal of roles/decision**

1. Oddity, introversion, and the love of privacy are the big enemies, **a total reversal of the values of** the upper orders.

古怪、内向、喜欢隐私是生活大敌,是完全颠倒上层社会的价值观念。

**C166. SEARCH: in search of excitement/employment/  
an opportunity/make a arduous/close/rigorous/thorough  
search for**

1. **The search for** extraterrestrial intelligence is **the search for** a generally acceptable cosmic context for the human species. In the deepest sense, **the search for** extraterrestrial intelligence is **a search for** ourselves.

搜寻外星人,就是搜寻可以被广为接受的人类生存的宇宙环境。所以从根本上来说,搜寻外星人就是搜寻人类自己。

2. They are more adventurous, more willing to take risk **in search of** a

political and economic system that suits their needs.

他们更渴望冒险,愿意承担风险去寻找适合他们需求的政治制度和经济制度。

3. Everywhere men and women crowd into cities **in search of** employment, a decent living, the company of their fellows, and the excitement and stimulation of urban life.

各地的男男女女都涌进城市,寻求工作和体面的生活,寻求同行的伙伴和城市生活(带来)的兴奋与刺激。

4. As many of America's urban dwellers have moved to the suburban rings **in search of** greater privacy, cleaner air and less social conflict, a pattern of urban living has emerged which is in sharp contrast to that in cities in other industrialized countries.

由于许多美国城市居民都搬到郊区去生活,寻找更多的隐私、更清洁的空气和较少的社会矛盾,这样就出现了一种新的城市生活方式,这种方式和其他发达国家的城市生活方式形成了强烈的反差。

**C167. SIGHT: lose sight of/at the sight of**

1. We sometimes **lose sight of** the fact that newspapers rely on a highly specific and colloquial vocabulary.

我们有时没注意到报纸在很大程度上依赖于具体的口头词汇。

2. The French visitors cheered **at the sight of** body-conscious Americans bending, stretching and leaping around.

法国参观者看到注重健康的美国人在弯腰曲背、舒展肢体、上下跳动,不禁大呼起来。

**C168. SIGN: a sign of**

1. The importance people attach to paid holidays and the rapid develop-

ment of services for mass entertainment and recreation are **signs of** this increasing concern.

对带薪度假的重视和迅速发展的大众娱乐休闲服务设施,就是人们对此日渐关注的标志。

2. The study also contains a finding worrisome for those who consider inadequate spending on research to be **a sign of economic weakness**.  
这项调查还包括一项令人担心的结果,因为在这些人看来,对研究的投资不够是经济疲软的表现。

**C169. STUDY: have/make a study of**

1. After **making statistical studies of** the world's resource, they say the effect of unlimited growth would be disastrous.  
以统计学研究了世界资源后,他们说无限制增长的结果将是毁灭性的。

**C170. SENSITIVITY: sensitivity to**

1. These examples illustrate the newborn's fine discrimination and **sensitivity to human contact**.  
这些例子说明了新生婴儿对人的接触具有良好的鉴别力和敏感性。
2. The poet—and we use the term to include all those who have respect for and speak to the human spirit—can help to supply the subconscious with material to **enhance its sensitivity**.  
诗人——我们用这一术语来概括那些受人尊敬、论述人类精神的人——可以给潜意识提供物质,提高其对事物的敏感性。

**C171. SHORTAGE: there is/have a shortage of**

1. We **have a shortage of young engineers** who are competent to handle new, advanced technologies. We **have a shortage of research scien-**

tists, the demand for whom has been doubling every decade.

我们缺少能够对付新的、先进技术的年轻工程师。我们缺少搞研究的科学家,而对上述人员的需求量每10年翻一番。

2. **There is, indeed, a shortage of numbers** in many fields of science and engineering. We could better cope with such a shortage if we did not also have **a severe shortage of quality**.

确实,在许多科技领域科学家的数量是远远不够的,但是如果他们的素质都很优秀的话,我们就能较好地对付数量不够的情况。

**C172. SIGNAL: be a signal of**

1. Since **price is often a signal to consumers** of a product's quality, a brand that is always on special offer loses its appeal.

由于价格对消费者来说往往是一种产品的质量标志,所以一个总是搞特价出售的品牌便会失去魅力。

**C173. SOLUTION: bring about/find/seek/offer/reach  
no (satisfactory) solution of/for/to; along the road to-  
wards the solution to understanding of**

1. These hearings must start us **along the road toward solutions** to the underlying conditions which afflict our cities.

这些听证必须促使我们开始解决这些困扰我们城市的基本状况。

2. However, any technological **solution to** the looming greenhouse problem must be worldwide.

然而,任何从技术上解决日益突出的温室问题必须从全球性着手。

3. In such a changing, complex society formerly **simple solutions to** informational needs become complicated.

在这个如此多变而又复杂的社会里,原先可以通过简单方法解决的信息需求问题,现在变得复杂化了。

**C174. SOURCE: a source of complaint/enjoyment**

1. Some people argue that it is because English weather defies forecast and hence is **a source of interest and speculation** to everyone.

有人说,因为英国的天气无法准确预报,所以天气成了人人感兴趣人人爱猜测的话题。

2. To them and countless others all over the world, reading is **a source of deepest and fullest enjoyment**.

对他们和世界上不计其数的人们来说,读书是最深切、最完美的享受源泉。

**C175. SPREAD: the spread of knowledge/civilization/disease/education**

1. It is really due to **the spread of the knowledge** and the practice of what is coming to be called "Death Control".

这真是目前正被称为“死亡控制”知识的传播和实践。

**C176. STUDY: the study of history**

1. We must then strive to achieve a better appreciation of other religious and political cultures through **the study of their history**, their literature, and their achievements.

我们必须通过研究其他社会的历史、文学和成就,来设法更好地理解这些宗教和政治文化。

**C177. SUBSTITUTE: there is (no)/used as a poor(easy/perfect/satisfactory) substitute for**

1. Of course daydreaming is **no substitute for hard work**. If it is athlet-



ic achievement you want, you also have to get lots of practice in your sport. You have to work hard to develop skills.

当然,做白日梦并不能取代艰苦的努力。如果你要取得体育成绩,就要进行许多训练。你必须刻苦努力,提高技术。

2. In applying religious values, we must respect the integrity of public debate. In that debate, faith is **no substitute for facts**.

运用宗教价值时,我们必须尊重公众辩论的整体性。在这种辩论中,信仰是不能代替事实的。

**C178. SUPPORT: lend/give support to; there is support**

1. So, if **there is little public support** for space exploration, where does the impetus to fund these activities come from?

所以,如果公众对宇宙探索不给予支持,那么资助这些活动的动力来自何方?

2. All the facts **lend some support to the view** that we have entered the "consumer society", or rather the "throw away society."

所有这些事实证明了我们的社会已进入了“消费社会”,或更确切地说是一个“一次性消费”社会。

3. Obviously, he clearly remained **a strong support of the view** that natural environments needed to be allowed to survive in peace in their own right.

显然,他仍然坚决支持这种观点:自然环境本身就有权利允许和平生存下来。

**C179. SURVIVAL: ensure/guarantee/endanger the survival of**

1. The rehabilitation process was important as an experiment in developing a means of trying to **guarantee the survival of** endangered

species.

恢复过程是非常重要的,因为它作为一项实验找到了确保濒临灭绝的物种得以生存下去的方法。

2. Man's achievements during this stay are astounding. Yet they **endanger his own survival**.

人类在这一时期所取得的成就是惊人的,但是这些成就危及到了人类自己的生存。

**C180. THOUGHT: apply/give/devote much thought to; direct one's thought towards**

1. Because we have so many more pressing problems on our hands, only the science-fiction writers have **given much thought to** the social life of the later electronic age.

由于我们手头有许多紧迫的问题需要解决,科幻作家们因此给予了较多考虑有关今后电子时代的社会生活。

2. A successful scientist **applies persistent and logical thought to** the observations he makes.

凡是有成就的科学家总是对其观察到的结果进行持续不断的和合乎逻辑的思考。

3. **It is a comforting thought** that gratitude can be not merely a passing sentiment but a renewal which can, in some instances, persist for a lifetime.

令人感到欣慰是感激之情不仅仅是一时的感情,在有些情况下还可以是一种能持续一生的自新。

**C181. THREAT: present a great threat to the safety of**

1. The hazards are **no threat to** physical life but they are to the achievement of success.

这些危险对身体并没有什么威胁,但对获取成功构成了威胁。

2. I have wondered about another endangered species, a species generally as ignorant of **the threat to** its survival as these two cats had been.

我始终在考虑另一种危险,这种危险一般自己意识不到生存问题,就像这两个虎。

3. Private schools and colleges have shown an unusual ability to survive and develop during a period of rising costs and dropping enrollments elsewhere. All this **presents**, of course, **a true threat to the** public school establishment.

在成本不断上升,入学人数日益减少时期,私立学校和学院就已经为其生存和发展显露了他们的非凡能力。这一切当然给公立学校带来了真正的威胁。

**C182. TOUCH: be/keep in close/constant touch with**

1. The more fully we are conscious of dreams, daydreams, fantasies, the more likely we are to **be in touch with** what our total organism desires.

我们越是充分意识到做梦、做白日梦和想入非非,我们越是能够接触我们整个的生物体所需要的东西。

**C183. TRUMPH: achieve a great/final triumph over**

1. In the end, **the triumph of** economic growth is not **a triumph of** humanity over material wants; rather, **it is the triumph of** material wants over humanity.

结果,经济发展的成功不只是人类战胜物质需求,而是物质需求战胜了人类。

**C184. UNDERSTANDING: to enhance/perfect/deepen his understanding of; have a better/clearer understanding of**

1. In order to know what laws should exist regarding divorce and remarriage, it is crucial to **have a clear understanding of** what makes a marriage a marriage.

为了知道离婚和再婚方面有什么法律存在,关键是要清楚地了解什么构成了婚姻。

2. Moreover, they were confident that he **had a greater understanding of** people and human nature than anyone who had ever lived.

而且,他们非常确信他对人和人类本性的了解超过了任何人。

3. In a democratic society, this means that the public needs to **have a basic understanding of** science, so that it can make informed decisions.

在一个民主的社会里,这意味着公众需要对科学有一个基本的了解,从而可以做出明智的决定。

**C185. USE: make a good/frequent/effective use of; enjoy/  
ban/popularize the use of; come into good/popular use**

1. **This special use of language**, particularly common in English, is known as understatement.

语言的这种特殊用法,称之为“含蓄”,在英语里尤为常见。

2. **The specific use of leisure** varies from individual to individual. Even the same leisure activity may be used differently by different individuals.

各人具体利用休闲各不相同。即使是同样的休闲活动,不同的人会不同地利用。

3. What he meant was that he consciously directed his studies to devices that could satisfy real needs and **come into popular use**.

他所指的就是他有意识地研究那些能够满足真正需要并为大众所使用的工具。

**C186. USEFULNESS: broaden/enhance/outlive/  
outgrow usefulness of**

1. More ominously for Gorbachev, Japuzelski is likely to be ousted after he **outlives his usefulness** as a transitional figure.

雅鲁泽尔斯基作为一个过渡性人物,在被利用完之后很可能被赶下台去。这对戈尔巴乔夫来说,更是一个不祥之兆。

**C187. VALIDITY: affect/question the validity**

1. People have traditionally tended to adopt general rules, beliefs, creeds, theories and ideas without thoroughly **question their validity** and to retain them long after they have been shown to be meaningless, false, or at least questionable.

人们倾向于接受一般的规则、信仰、信念、理论和观点而不问一问它们是否正确,而且在被证明毫无意义的、谬误的或者至少是可疑的之后,还会长时间地抱住它们不放。

2. Once an idea or a belief about ourselves goes into this picture it becomes "true", as far as we personally are concerned. **We do not question its validity**, but proceed to act upon it just as if it were true.

有关我们自己的某种想法或信念一旦进入这幅画像,它就变成了“真实的”。就我们个人而言我们从不怀疑是否正确,而是根据它去行动,就好像它是真的一样。

**C188. VIEW: (have)a view of**

1. **Any view of** the future must begin with a sense of the whole. The human habitat is in jeopardy.

任何对未来的看法都应从全局观念出发。人类的居住地正处

于危险之中。

**C189. VIOLATION: a violation of**

1. Perhaps more than any other creature man is notable for **his constant violation of** the eternal law of living in harmony with nature.

比起地球上任何生命来,或许是人类在不断地违反本来应和自然和睦相存的永恒规律。

**C190. WASTE: a waste of**

1. For those who ought not to go to college or who go for the wrong reasons, college is **a waste of time and money.**

对那些不应去读大学或为了错误的理由读大学的人来说,读大学是浪费时间和金钱。

2. Many people in industry who have practical experience of noise, regard any investigation of this question **as a waste of time**; they are not prepared even to admit the possibility that noise affects people.

工业部门中许多对噪音有实践经验的人认为,对这一问题进行调查是浪费时间,他们甚至不愿承认噪音可能会影响人。

3. Until recently daydreaming was generally considered either **a waste of time** or a symptom of neurotic tendencies.

直到前不久,人们还普遍认为做白日梦不是浪费时间就是精神病的潜在症状。

**C191. WILLINGNESS: with/have/show the willingness to**

1. It means **having the willingness and ability to** respond quickly and flexibly to changing business needs.

这意味着他们愿意也有能力对经营中不断变化的需求做出快速而灵活的反应。

2. In order to grow, people need to **have a willingness to** take risks, and to accept the possibility that they may fail. How we see ourselves as we try a new way of being is essential to our ability to grow.

为了成长,人们需要也愿意承担风险,接受失败的可能性。在尝试一种新的生活方式时,我们如何看待自己对我们成长的能力是相当关键的。

**C192. WISDOM: question the wisdom**

1. The freedom to make such personal decisions is a fundamental aspect of our society, although **the wisdom of these decisions can be questioned.**

能自由地对自己的事做出决定是我们社会最基本的东西,虽然这些决定是否明智值得怀疑。

## 抽象名词索引

### A

- C1. ABSENCE: (with/there is) the absence of attempt/work
- C2. ACCEPTANCE: have/find/obtain/gain/win acceptance for/among/  
of
- B4. ACCELERATE: accelerate the control/use/development of
- C3. ACCESS: gain/get/have/attain/give (ready/easy) access to
- C4. ACQUISITION: acquisition of knowledge/a language/information
- B1. ADD: add to the attraction/comfort/interest/pleasure/ the income/  
the power/dignity
- B5. AFTER: after many years (decades) of isolation/hostility/anticipa-  
tion
- C5. AGREEMENT: there is general agreement that
- B2. ALONG WITH: along with the development/decline/increase
- B6. AMID: amid mounting pressure/discontent
- C6. ANALYSIS: make a careful/close analysis of
- C7. ANTICIPATION: in anticipation of a rise/fall/success
- C8. ANTIDOTE: as an (strong/powerful) antidote to boredom
- C9. ANTIPATHY: have/arouse/provoke a strong/natural antipathy to/  
towards
- C10. APATHY: show/have/with an (political/election) apathy toward  
sth.
- C11. APPEAL: make a direct/strong appeal to
- C12. APPETITE: have/stimulate a strong/keen appetite for



- C13. APPLICATION: the application of knowledge/theory
- B7. APPRECIATE: appreciate one's generosity/understanding/sympathy
- C14. APPRECIATION: cultivate/deepen/express/show an ( better/keen) appreciation of
- B9. ARISE/COME/DERIVE/EVOLVE/SPRING: arise from the understanding/knowledge
- B8. AROUSE: arouse interest in/curiosity about/expectation of
- B3. AS A RESULT OF: as a result of the negotiation/discussion/consideration
- C15. ASSESSMENT: make an assessment of
- C16. ASSOCIATION: be/have an association with
- C17. ATTACK: come under (personal/sharp) attack
- C18. ATTAINMENT: the attainment of goals/aim/objective
- C19. ATTENTION: bring... to public attention/claim/draw/come to the attention of
- C20. ATTEMPT: make an attempt/in an attempt to
- C21. AVAILABILITY: the availability of information/money
- B10. AWAKEN/WAKE: awaken sb. ( wake up) to the importance/menace/need
- C22. AWARENESS: heighten/reduce/increase/sharpen/spark/obscure one's awareness of

## **B**

- C23. BARRIER: a barrier to the development/progress
- B12. BECAUSE: because of the use/refusal/shortage
- B13. BECOME: become a necessity/possibility/reality/certainty
- C24. BELIEF: express/foster/hold a belief in/  
there is a widely accepted/held belief that

contrary to popular/general/growing belief

B14. BEYOND: beyond ( the reach of ) one's control/understanding/  
ability of

C25. BOREDOM: to escape/interrupt/relieve boredom

B15. BOOST: boost the efficiency/productivity/development

B16. BREED: breed instability/hostility/independency

B17. BRING: bring enjoyment/satisfaction/explosion

## C

C26. CAPACITY: ( has a ) capacity for development /organization

B18. CAUSE: cause concern/harm

C27. CELEBRATION: a celebration of freedom/success/achievement

C28. CERTAINTY: be/become a certainty/with/has certainty

C29. CHALLENGE: meet/accept the challenge

C30. CHANGE: undergo/bring about/inaugurate great/marked change

C31. CHOICE: make a wise choice

C32. COMBINATION: ( express/symbolize ) a rare/happy combination of

B19. COME ABOUT: awareness/advance/change/come about ( take  
place )

C33. COMFORT: take/derive/seek comfort from/enjoy the comfort of

C34. COMMAND: acquire/has/secure a good command of

C35. COMMENT: make comment about

C36. COMMITMENT: with the commitment to

C37. COMPARAISON: in comparison with/to

C38. COMPETITION: enter/get into competition with/  
in competition with/for

B20. COMPROMISE: compromise the quality/effort

C39. CONCENTRATION: the concentration of

- C40. CONCERN: there is/express/arouse/show/give concern over/for/about/with
- B23. CONFRONT: be confronted with the danger/shortage
- C42. CONNECTION: there is/bear connection to
- C43. CONSCIOUSNESS: a national/world/class/deep consciousness
- C41. CONSIDERATION: give consideration to/take sth. into consideration
- C44. CONTACT: come into/establish/create/need/regain/retain/strengthen/have (close/frequent/understanding) contacts with/between; bring/take sb. into contact with
- B24. CONTRARY: contrary to the (wide/common/general) belief/thought/assumption
- B21. CONTRIBUTE: contribute to the understanding/solution/growth of
- C45. CONTRIBUTION: make a contribution to society/humans
- C46. CONTROL: exert control over/bring... under control
- C47. CONVICTION: confirm/express/deepen/hold/voice the conviction; carry/bring conviction to sb./have/there is a strong/widespread conviction that/be in the conviction that
- C48. CORRELATION: there is /find correlation between
- C49. CREDIBILITY: lose/enhance the credibility of/with
- C50. CRITICISM: be subjected to (harsh/sharp) criticism/challenge/defy/excite/invite/survive/resent/tolerate criticism/come under (fierce) criticism for
- B25. CULTIVATE: cultivate the understanding/knowledge/friendship
- C51. CULTIVATION: the cultivation of personality/skill
- B22. CURB/HAMPER/STUN: curb/hamper/stun the growth/development/advance

C52. CURE: there is/develop no cure for

## D

C53. DEMAND: there is an increasing demand (pressure) for

C54. DENIAL: the denial of

C55. DEPARTURE: make/justify/mark a new departure in/from the traditional value/old method

C58. DESIRABILITY: question/prove the desirability of

C57. DESIRE: (have) a desire to/for

B26. DESPITE/IN SPITE OF: despite/in spite of the advance/backwardness/frustration

C56. DEVOTION: have devotion to

B32. DIMINISH: diminish the pressure/intensity/friction:

C59. DISAGREEMENT: express/there is disagreement

C60. DISCOVERY: the discovery of

C61. DISPLAY: show (with) a display of

B27. DISPLAY: display the respect/courage/confidence

C62. DISSATISFACTION: there is/express/voice/cause a deep/growing/widespread dissatisfaction with

C63. DIVERSITY: There is/obtain wide/great diversity of opinion as to

C64. DRAIN: a great/heavy drain on

B28. DUE/OWING/THANKS: due (owing/thanks) to the lack/shortage of

## E

C65. EAGERNESS: one's eagerness to do sth.

B29. EARN: earn/cost/win respect/admiration/friendship/affection

C66. EFFECT: exert/have a harmful effect on

- C67. EFFICIENCY: improve/add/increase efficiency of
- C68. EFFORT: make/have/exert a ( great/tremendous/persistent/sustained) effort to
- B30. ELIMINATE: eliminate the need/foolishness/boredom
- C69. EMANCIPATION: represent an emancipation from errors/prejudice/control
- C70. EMIGRATION: the emigration of people
- C71. EMPHASIS: place/put emphasis on
- B31. ENCOURAGE: encourage participation/concentration/development
- C72. ENCOURAGEMENT: provide/give encouragement
- C73. END: bring... to an end/put an end to
- B33. END: end in dissatisfaction/failure
- B34. ENHANCE: enhance the beauty/productivity
- B35. ENJOY: enjoy the protection/support/assistance/popularity/approval of/the triumph in/enjoy great prestige/autonomy/credibility/access/warmth/enjoy an increase/growth/surge in/enjoy prosperity/affluence/considerable influence/attention
- C74. ENJOYMENT: enhance/heighten/afford/block the enjoyment of
- B36. ENSURE: ensure the growth/survival/acceptability
- B37. ERODE: erode ability/reputation/popularity of
- C75. ESCAPE: an escape from life/realities/responsibilities
- B38. ESCAPE: escape from boredom/pressure; escape one's memory/sense
- C76. EXAMINATION: examination of
- C77. EXCESS: excess of
- C78. EXCHANGE: an exchange of
- B39. EXHIBIT: exhibit courage

- C79. EXISTENCE: deny/threaten/justify the existence of
- B40. EXPERIENCE/UNDERGO: experience/undergo a rise/decrease/  
decline/surge in
- C80. EXPLANATION: have an explanation of
- C81. EXPOSURE: (heavy) exposure to
- B41. EXPRESS: express dissatisfaction/disapproval
- C82. EXPRESSION: offer/give/be an expression of

## F

- B42. FACE: face the threat/resistance/pressure/in the face of danger/  
difficulty/threat/opposition/criticism
- B43. FACILITATE: facilitate the transportation/settlement
- C83. FAILURE: the failure to/of
- C84. FAMILIARITY: (have/acquire) familiarity with
- B44. FIND: find a welcome/acceptance/popularity/favor/application
- C85. FLUCTUATION: a great/constant fluctuation in policy/price/fluc-  
tuation of
- C86. FONDNESS: cultivate/develop/have/fondness for
- B45. FORCE: force the retirement/withdrawal
- B46. FOSTER: foster the growth/an interest
- B47. FREE: be free from the pressure/want
- C87. FREEDOM: freedom from
- B48. FUEL: fuel the growing criticism of/confusion about/discontent/  
anxiety

## G

- B49. GIVEN: given the difficulty/complexity

## H

C88. HINDRANCE: a hindrance to

## I

C89. IGNORANCE: display/betray one's ignorance of/about

C90. ILLUSTRATION: (give) an better illustration of

C91. IMITATION: the imitation of

C92. IMPACT: have/lessen the great impact on/of

C93. IMPORTANCE: be of importance/attach/give much importance to

C94. INABILITY: inability to do

C95. INCENTIVE: give/afford/there is a (strong/special) incentive to/  
for

C96. INCREASE: increase in

B50. INCREASE: increase the efficiency determination/flexibility/knowledge

C99. IDENTIFICATION: identification with

C97. INDICATION: an indication of

C98. INDIFFERENCE: have/with indifference to

C100. INFLUENCE: exercise/exert/have a profound/considerable/great  
influence on/over

C101. INSIGHT: afford/gain/give/get/have/an (clear/fair/critical) insight into

C102. INSISTENCE: insistence on

C104. INTEREST: find/take/have an interest in

C103. INTERFERENCE: suffer/require (personal/governmental) interference with/in

## **J**

C105. **JEOPARDY**: put (place) . . . in jeopardy

C106. **JUSTIFICATION**: (there is) sufficient/justification for/with considerable/full justification for

B51. **JUSTIFY**: justify the violation/investment/cost/incompetence/decision of/the desire to

## **K**

C107. **KNOWLEDGE**: have/with a (little/common) knowledge of

## **L**

C108. **LACK**: display/show/have a lack of intelligence/common sense/ (for) lack of ability/foresight/confidence/consideration

B52. **LEAD**: lead to the understanding/knowledge/contribution of

C109. **LIKELIHOOD**: there is every/little likelihood of/that

C110. **LONGING**: have a great longing for

C111. **LOSS**: be/entail/incur/suffer/show/a (heavy) loss of

## **M**

C112. **MAINSTREAM**: the mainstream of society/political thought

C113. **MAINTENANCE**: the maintenance of peace/justice/order

C114. **MANIFESTATION**: a manifestation of

C115. **MANIPULATION**: be a manipulation of

C116. **MARK**: a mark of inferiority/wisdom/ignorance

C117. **MASTERY**: a mastery of skills/techniques/nature

C118. **MEASURE**: be a/the measure of

C119. **MEMORY**: arouse/awaken/cherish/bring back the memories/



the memories of . . . is failing/fading/dimming/  
have a clear memory of

C120. MENACE: constitute/become a potential/serious menace to/of

C121. MENTALITY: modern/average/children's/normal mentality

B53. MINIMIZE: minimize the seriousness/risk/gravity

C122. MISUNDERSTANDING: there is/have/lead to a misunderstanding  
of

C123. MONOPOLY: enjoy/establish/break/have a monopoly of/on

## N

C124. NEED: (eliminate/do away with) the need for

C125. NEGLECT: show a/no neglect of

C126. NECESSITY: prove/point to the necessity of/for

C127. NUISANCE: be a nuisance to

## O

C128. OBJECTION: there is (has) objection to

C129. OBSERVATION: have/make a closer/careful observation of/that

C130. OBSESSION: obsession with

C131. OBSTACLE: there is/meet an obstacle to the growth/advance

B54. OFFSET: offset the loss/damage/liability

C132. ORIENTATION: has an orientation toward

B55. OWE/ATTRIBUTE: owe/attribute to the lack/inability/adoption  
of

## P

C133. PARTICIPATION: withdraw/encourage/oppose one's participation  
in the political/public life

- C134. **PASSION**: arouse/develop/have/with a strong passion for
- C135. **PERSPECTIVE**: have/get/gain perspective on
- C136. **PERVERSION**: a perversion of
- C137. **POPULARITY**: rise/decline in popularity/enhance/enjoy/gain/  
find the popularity of/among
- C138. **POSSIBILITY**: (there is) the possibility of/that
- C139. **POSSESSION**: gain/obtain/secure/retain possession of/in (full)  
possession of
- C140. **PREOCCUPATION**: be preoccupation with
- C141. **PRESENCE**: make one's presence felt/during one's presence/in  
the presence of
- C142. **PRESSURE**: pressure for/put pressure on
- B56. **PREVENT**: prevent the use/solution/pollution of
- C143. **PRODUCTIVITY**: increase/block the productivity of
- B57. **PROJECT**: project firmness/kindness/disappointment onto
- B58. **PROMOTE**: promote the growth/use of
- C144. **PROLIFERATION**: the proliferation of
- C145. **PROSPECT**: see/have/there is no/little prospect of success/pro-  
motion
- C146. **PROTECTION**: afford/provide adequate/little protection from/  
against/a protection for/against/of
- B59. **PROVE**: prove a failure/digression
- B60. **PROVIDE**: provide a solution/escape
- C147. **PUBLICITY**: accord/give publicity to/gain/seek publicity through
- C148. **PURSUIT**: in the pursuit of

## Q

- C149. **QUEST**: in quest of/the quest for truth/knowledge

## R

- C150. REACTION: (in) reaction to
- C151. REALIZATION: at the realization/come to a (full) realization of/  
bring me the realization that
- C152. RECOGNITION: there is a (one's) recognition (of)
- B61. REDUCE: reduce the support/participation/boredom/pressure
- C153. REDUCTION: a reduction of
- C154. REFLECTION/MIRROR: a (good/faithful /) reflection/mirror of
- C155. REFUSAL: refusal to do sth.
- C156. REJECTION: (a) rejection of
- C157. RELIEF: bring/seek/find relief from
- C158. RELUCTANCE: show/feel reluctance to/in one's reluctance to  
do/sacrifice sth. with reluctance
- C159. RELIABILITY: prove/assess the reliability
- B62. REQUIRE: require patience/determination/perseverance/love/re-  
spect/dedication/attention/devotion
- C160. REQUIREMENT: the requirement of
- C161. RESEMBLANCE: bear little/no/much resemblance to
- C163. RESPONSE: make a effective response to/in response to
- B64. RESPONSIBLE: be responsible for misunderstanding/contribution
- C162. RESISTENCE: offer/give no/little resistance to
- B63. RESIST: resist the analysis/explanation/attempt/temptation
- B65. RESULT: result in failure/breakdown
- C164. REVELATION: a revelation of
- C165. REVERSAL: (suffer/bring about/result in) a dramatic reversal of  
roles/decision
- B66. RID: rid of/get rid of prejudice

B67. RISK: risk failure/loss/boredom

## S

C166. SEARCH: in search of excitement/employment/an opportunity;  
make a arduous/close/rigorous/thorough search for

C170. SENSITIVITY: sensitivity to

B68. SHOW: show the indifference/reluctance/interest

C167. SIGHT: lose sight of/at the sight of

C168. SIGN: a sign of

C169. STUDY: have/make a study of

C171. SHORTAGE: there is/have a shortage of

C172. SIGNAL: be a signal of

C173. SOLUTION: bring about/find/seek/offer/reach no (satisfactory)  
solution of/for/to/along the road towards the solution  
to understanding of

C174. SOURCE: a source of complaint/enjoyment

C175. SPREAD: the spread of knowledge/civilization/disease/education

B69. STAND: stand up to close scrutiny/intensive publicity/examina-  
tion

B70. STIMULATE/FUEL/ENHANCE: stimulate/fuel the growth/de-  
velopment

C176. STUDY: the study of history

B71. SUBJECT: subjected to a critical examination/a sharp criticism/  
investigation/a close scrutiny/a careful analysis

C177. SUBSTITUTE: there is/used as a poor (easy/perfect/satisfactory)  
substitute for

B72. SUFFER: suffer negative publicity/a political humiliation/dis-  
crimination/injustice/the loss of stature/rising unem-

ployment; suffer a sharp decline in

C178. SUPPORT: lend/give support to; there is support

C179. SURVIVAL: ensure/guarantee/endanger the survival of

B73. SURVIVE: survive the criticism/attack/disapproval of

B74. SYMBOLIZE: symbolize the liberation of

## T

B75. TAX: tax the ability/ingenuity

B76. THERE: There is realization/recognition/demand/concern/shift/  
agreement

C180. THOUGHT: apply/give/devote much thought to/direct one's  
thought towards

C181. THREAT: present a great threat to the safety of

C182. TOUCH: be/keep in close/constant touch with

C183. TRUMP: achieve a great/final triumph over

## U

B77. UNDERGO: undergo great change/development

B78. UNDERMINE: undermine attempts/confidence/friendship/strength/  
authority/health

C184. UNDERSTANDING: to enhance/perfect/deepen his understanding  
of/have a better/clearer understanding of

C185. USE: make a good/frequent/effective use of/enjoy/ban/popular-  
ize the use of/come into good/popular use

C186. USEFULNESS: broaden/enhance/outlive/outgrow usefulness of

## V

C187. VALIDITY: affect/question the validity

**B79. VALUE:** value independence/openness

**C188. VIEW:** (have) a view of

**C189. VIOLATION:** a violation of

## **W**

**C190. WASTE:** a waste of

**C191. WILLINGNESS:** with/have/show the willinness to

**C192. WISDOM:** question the wisdom

**B80. WITH:** with the development/advance/invention

**B81. WITHOUT:** without the use/consideration of

## 主要参考文献

Chao, Y. R., 1968, *A Grammar of Spoken Chinese*, University of California Press, New York.

Gowers, Ernest, 1977, *The Complete Plain Words*

Francis, G. 1986, *Anaphoric Nouns*, Birmingham: English Language Teaching. Longman Group Limited.

\_\_\_\_\_, 1989, Aspects of nominal-group lexical cohesion. *Interface. Journal of Applied Linguistics*, 4(1).

Halliday, M. A. K, and R. Hasan. 1976, *Cohesion in English*. London: Longman Group Limited.

\_\_\_\_\_, 1985, *Language, Context and Text: Aspects of Language as a Socio-semantic Perspective*, Victoria: Deakin University Press.

Halliday, M. A. K, 1996, "Things and Relations: Regrammatizing Experience as Technical Knowledge", in J. R. Martin & R. Veel (eds.) *Reading Science: Critical and Functional Perspectives on Discourses of Science*. London: Edward Arnold.

Jespersen, O. 1949, *A Modern English Grammar*. Munksgard, Copenhagen.

Quirk, R. et al. 1985, *A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language*. Longman, London.

Sinclair, J. M. 1993, *Writing Discourse Structure*. In J. Sinclair, M. Hoey, & G. Fox (Eds.), *Techniques of description: Spoken and written discourse*. A festschrift for Malcolm Coulthard. London: Routledge.

- Tadros, A, 1985, Prediction in Text, UK: University of Birmingham.
- 王力, 1984, 《中国语法理论》第一卷, 山东教育出版社
- 王力, 2000, 《王力语言学论文集》, 商务印书馆
- 朱永生、严世清, 2001, 《系统功能语言学多维思考》, 上海外语教育出版社
- 张今, 1996, 《英语抽象名词研究》, 河南大学出版社
- 许余龙, 1992, 《对比语言学概论》, 上海外语教育出版社
- 陆国强, 1984, 《现代英语表达与理解》, 上海译文出版社
- 潘国文, 1997, 《汉英语对比纲要》, 北京语言文化大学出版社
- 连淑能, 1993, 《英汉对比研究》, 高等教育出版社
- 胡明扬, 1996, 《词类问题考察》, 北京语言文化大学出版社
- 钱歌川, 1976, 《英语疑难详解》, 香港中外出版社
- 彭启良, 1978, 《翻译与比较》, 商务印书馆
- 马祖毅, 1980, 《英译汉技巧》, 江苏人民出版社



责任编辑

计美娟

封面设计

孙曙

# English Writing

ISBN 7-309-03548-8



9 787309 035483 >

H · 701 定价：12.00元